





Class PE 1111

Book .H 48

1854







THE

1025  
3563

ANALYTIC AND SYNTHETIC

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

IN WHICH

THE SUBJECT IS DISCUSSED BY PARTS OF SPEECH  
AND BY STRUCTURES.

In Three Parts.

BY EDWARD HAZEN, A. M.,

AUTHOR OF "THE SYMBOLICAL SPELLING-BOOK," "THE SPELLER AND  
DEFINER," "THE GRAMMATIC READERS," "POPULAR  
TECHNOLOGY," ETC.

NEW YORK:

F. J. HUNTINGTON: MASON & BROTHERS,

23 PARK ROW.

1854.

54  
Deposited in the Clerk's Office  
Dist. of New York Oct. 19. 1853.

PE IIII  
H 48  
1854

# Dedication.

---

THIS WORK IS RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED  
TO  
THE TEACHERS OF THE UNITED STATES,  
WHO HAVE LEARNED,  
BY RESEARCH AND FROM EXPERIENCE,  
THAT THE  
PREVAILING SYSTEM OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR  
ADMITT OF IMPROVEMENT.

EDWARD HAZEN.

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1852, by  
EDWARD HAZEN,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

---

J. P. JONES & CO., STEREOTYPERS, }  
186 WILLIAM STREET, N. Y.

*Original copy of the book is in the collection of the New York Public Library*

## P R E F A C E .

---

ENGLISH GRAMMAR is generally regarded an important branch of education, and efforts are made to learn it in nearly all the schools throughout our vast country. Nevertheless, pupils fail, in nearly all cases, to acquire a tolerable knowledge of the science, and a still greater number fail to apply in practice what they learn of the theory.

Many grammarians have seen the futility of the usual grammatic course, and have endeavored to make improvements. Some have proposed a new nomenclature ; others have made a new arrangement of the several parts, and have introduced new definitions and new formulas of parsing. Enterprising teachers have again and again changed their text-books. in the hope of better success. Still, no subject is so badly taught, and no subject is so heartily despised by pupils of every grade.

Notwithstanding these numerous failures, the author has had the hardihood to risk the best portion of his life in preparing and publishing another work on this subject. He has endeavored to make improvements everywhere ; but he has done more by adding new principles, than in improving the modes of presenting the old.

That the author may be precisely understood, he will give a general outline of the principles in the science of grammar, and point out those which are peculiar to his own work.

There are three leading principles in the science of grammar.

1. Language is composed of distinct parts of speech.

2. The parts of speech are associated in groups, called structures.

3. In these structures, some of the parts of speech are subject to modifications, called accidents, and all have a mutual dependence, indicated by the rules of syntax.

The prevailing system of grammar comprises the classification of words by the parts of speech, a description of the accidents, and the rules of syntax; but it leaves learners to infer from them the structures. A few persons, out of a great number, may make out the inference; but the rest are ever bewildered in the mazes of verbiage.

In this work, the structures are definitely named and described, so that they may be known as distinctly as tangible objects. In every case the elements suggest the name, and the name suggests the elements. Of these structures there are thirty-six in the English language, all of which are named by a combination of thirteen terms, taken chiefly from ordinary grammar.

As much of the claim of this work to public favor is founded on the peculiarities just described, it is necessary for the author to state in some detail what good this addition to the old system has enabled him to accomplish.

1. It has enabled the author to display the whole subject in a systematic manner.

2. It has enabled him to present the language in distinct portions, and to explain and illustrate the principles, without distracting the minds of learners with too many points at a time, and without anticipating their knowledge.

3. It has enabled him to present the theory and the illustrations in such a manner, that learners may apply the theory in elementary composition at every step of their progress.

4. It has enabled him to devise a mode of synthetic analysis, by which may be expressed as much in one or two

minutes as can be done in one hour by the ordinary formulas of parsing.

5. It has enabled him to afford definite directions for applying the conjunctions.

6. It has enabled him to give a vast number of examples of verbal associations, in such a manner, that they may become the foundation of the style of all who may thoroughly study his work.

7. It has enabled him to supply a series of reading lessons by which teachers of taste and good judgment may bring their pupils to read with exact precision and great elegance.

By the preceding statements, it will be perceived that the author has prepared a work for teaching the English language generally ; that his book is at once a Grammar, an Elementary Rhetoric, and a Reader.

The theory of the structures constitutes the chief part of the philosophy of the language ; yet, the whole of it can be learned by pupils who can form clear conceptions of the nature of case in parsing. A grammarian of the old stamp can learn the names and elements of all the structures in one or two hours, and he could teach the whole system without a moment's study on a single lesson before the class is before him ; provided he commence at the beginning, and hear every recitation.

The chief objection made to a new grammar is founded on the difficulty of learning new formulas of parsing or analyzation. To relieve teachers from vague apprehensions on this account, the author states that his ordinary forms of analyzation by parts of speech and by structure, amount to about one hundred lines once told. Pupils should learn these formulas by concert repetition, under the correct vocal lead of the teacher. While conducting the exercises in this manner, even aged teachers could learn the formulas as rapidly as their pupils.

The author has made these explanations and declarations in the hope, that those who may read his preface, may be induced

to examine his work with care and candor ; and that, in forming an opinion in relation to its merits, they will not mistake the recoil of the mind from new principles and new modes of instruction, for the decisions of an unbiased judgment.

EDWARD HAZEN.

NEW YORK, *July* 15, 1853.

#### DIVISIONS OF THE WORK.

The work is divided into **THREE PARTS**.

**PART FIRST** comprises a short treatise on orthography, the etymology and syntax of the noun, the article, the adjective, the pronoun, the adjective pronoun, and the verb.

These classes of words are discussed as they occur, as far as it would be expedient for young learners to study them. They receive further attention in other parts of the work.

**PART SECOND** comprises the etymology and syntax of the adverb, the preposition, the participle, the gerundive, [participial noun], the verb in the infinitive mode, and a full explanation of the structures of the language.

**PART THIRD** comprises the etymology and syntax of the conjunction, and the different classes of pronouns not before fully discussed.

**PART FIRST** is published in a separate volume as an introductory grammar. The **THREE PARTS** bound together in 12mo. form, constitute the grammar complete for the use of the higher classes.

\*.\*—No examples of false syntax have been introduced, inasmuch as correct examples answer a far better purpose as guides to correct practice. The instructor can easily make false syntax out of the correct examples, by making that part of them incorrect to which the rule under consideration is applicable.

## GENERAL CONTENTS.

---

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

Letters,	10 Diphthongs,	11
Syllables,	11 Triphthongs,	11

### ETYMOLOGY.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH,	12	
THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN,	13	
Gender,	14 Person,	27
Number,	18 Case,	27, 44

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

THE ARTICLE,	28	
THE ADJECTIVE,	34	
Descriptive adjectives,	34 Numeral adjectives,	37
Proper adjectives,	36 Comparison of adjectives,	38
THE PRONOUN,	48, 276	
1. The personal pronouns,	5. The relative pronouns,	288
	48, 277 6. The interrogative pro-	
2. The compound personal	noun,	297
pronouns,	49, 278 7. The interrogative ad-	
3. The adjective pronouns,	jective pronouns,	298
	50, 280 8. The compound relative	
4. The possessive personal	pronouns,	300
pronouns,	286	
THE VERB,	53	
The transitive verb,	53 Defective verbs,	68
The intransitive verb,	53 Auxiliary verbs,	68
The passive verb,	54 Number and person,	69
Modifications of verbs,	54 Synopsis of the verb,	76
Regular verbs,	55 Forms of conjugation,	82
Irregular verbs,	60 Illustrations of the verb,	86



THE STRUCTURES,	109
THE PREDICATIONS,	112
The intransitive predication,	113
The transitive predication,	114
The passive predication,	115
The intransitive post-adjective predication,	116
THE ADVERB,	122
THE PREPOSITION,	134
THE PARTICIPLE,	148
THE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATES,	148
THE INTERJECTION,	158
THE INDEPENDENT CASE,	160
APPOSITION,	163
THE GERUNDIVE,	166
THE GERUNDIVE PREDICATES,	166
THE PREP. GERUNDIVE PREDICATES,	175
THE INFINITIVE PREDICATES,	185
SYNOPSIS OF THE STRUCTURES,	204
THE CONJUNCTION,	213
1. The additive conjunctions,	213
2. The alternative conjunctions,	214
3. The correspondive conjunctions,	214
4. The adversative conjunctions,	247
5. The causative conjunctions,	252
6. The inferential conjunctions,	254
7. The adverbial conjunctions,	255
8. The comparative adverbial conjunctions,	261
9. The conditional conjunctions,	269



THE  
ANALYTIC AND SYNTHETIC  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

---

PART FIRST.

---

LANGUAGE.

LANGUAGE is the chief medium of interchanging thought. It is composed of sounds and words, the import of which is established by usage. It is said to be *oral* when expressed in vocal and articulate sounds, and *written* when expressed by letters or artificial signs.

The languages spoken by the human race are very numerous, and are different in word and structure; but nearly all of them are said to bear marks of a common origin. They are usually designated by the name of the people who have used them; as, the *Greek* language, the *French* language, the *English* language.

In the English language there are said to be about seventy thousand words; but, deducting the technical, the unusual, and the obsolete, about fifteen thousand remain as the staple for common and literary purposes.

## GRAMMAR.

Grammar is the science of language, and the art of speaking and writing accurately. As a science, it is a system of principles; as an art, it is a system of rules for guiding learners in the definite application of the science.

Certain grammatic principles are common to all languages; but, in addition to these, every language has peculiarities of its own. In *English grammar* the common principles are displayed, together with those peculiar to the *English language*.

## DIVISIONS OF GRAMMAR.

Grammar is divided into four parts; namely,

ORTHOGRAPHY,	SYNTAX,
ETYMOLOGY,	PROSODY.

---

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY relates to *letters*, *syllables*, and *words*.

## LETTERS.

A *letter* is an alphabetic character used in writing or printing, to represent some elementary sound of speech.

The English alphabet is composed of twenty-six letters. The letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

A *vowel* represents a free, open sound, formed without contact of the organs of speech.

A *consonant* represents an articulate sound, or a sound produced or modified by contact of the organs of speech.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *w* and *y*. *W* and *y* are vowels or consonants, according to their use.

The consonants are divided into *mutes* and *semi-vowels*.

The *mutes* are *b, d, k, p, q, t*, and *c* and *g* hard. These letters are called mutes, because, in uttering them, the voice and the breath are suddenly checked.

The *semi-vowels* are *f, h, j, l, m, n, r, s, v, w, x, y, z*, and *c* and *g* soft.

*W* and *y* are semi-vowels, when they occur immediately before a vowel sound. In all other positions, they are vowels.

*L, m, n*, and *r*, are also denominated *liquids*, because their sounds flow smoothly into those of other letters.

#### SYLLABLES.

A *syllable* is a letter, or a combination of letters, uttered by a single impulse of the voice.

#### DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

A *diphthong* is two vowels combined in one syllable; as, *ou* in *sound*; *oa* in *boat*. When both vowels are sounded, it is a *proper diphthong*. When but one vowel is sounded, it is an *improper diphthong*, or a *digraph*.

A *triphthong* is three vowels combined in one syllable; as, *ieu* in *lieu*; *iew* in *view*. When all the vowels are sounded, it is a *proper triphthong*. When one or two of the vowels are sounded, it is an *improper triphthong*, or a *trigraph*.

#### WORDS.

A *word*, in spoken language, is a distinct part of speech; or, a word is a syllable, or a distinct combination of syllables.

A word of one syllable is a *monosyllable*,  
 A word of two syllables is a *dissyllable*,  
 A word of three syllables is a *trisyllable*,  
 A word of four or more syllables is a *polysyllable*.

Words have as many syllables as they require distinct impulses of the voice to utter them ; and they should generally be divided, in oral spelling, writing, and printing, as the syllables are heard in the pronunciation.

In writing and printing, a syllable should not be divided at the end of a line, nor should a vowel, beginning a word, end a line.

---

## ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY relates to the *classification*, the *inflection*, and the *derivation* of words.

*Classification* is the division of words into different sorts.

*Inflection* is the change of form which words undergo, to express different relations.

*Derivation* relates to the origin and formation of words.

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The words of the English language are divided into nine classes ; viz.,

The substantive, or noun,	The verb,
The article,	The adverb,
The adjective,	The preposition,
The pronoun,	The interjection,
The conjunction.	

## THE SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

A SUBSTANTIVE, or NOUN, is the name of any thing that is made a subject of thought ; as,

Animal,	Philip,	goodness,
hero,	Johnson,	gravity,
vessel,	Andes,	concealment.

## CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS.

Nouns are divided into *common*, *proper*, and *collective*.

A *common noun* is a name which may be applied to every individual of the same class or kind ; as,

Man,	town,	paper,	purity,
child,	river,	carpet,	magnitude,
horse,	mountain,	farmer,	investment.

Common nouns are subdivided into *abstract*, *verbal*, and *diminutive*.

An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality, or an attribute taken abstractedly ; as,

Wisdom,	amplitude,	honesty,
acuteness,	constancy,	jollity,
absurdity,	fragrance,	grandiloquence.

A *verbal noun* is a word which is derived from a verb, and which expresses action, being, or a state of being, without predicating like a verb ; as,

Denial,	concealment,	admittance,
action,	exposure,	convalescence,
failure,	acceptance,	conference.

A *diminutive noun* is derived from another noun, and represents an object of a similar kind, but smaller ; as,

Primitive.	Diminutive.	Primitive.	Diminutive.
Lamb,	lambkin.	River,	rivulet.
Duck,	duckling.	Hill,	hillock.

A *proper noun* is a particular name of a person, place, or thing ; as,

Charles,	Hannah More,	Europe,
Mary,	Robert Fulton,	Baltimore,
William,	John Marshal,	Sunday.

When a proper noun is used to denote a class, or one of a class, of persons or things, it becomes a common noun ; as, I saw a number of *Americans* in Paris.—He is a *Cataline* or a *Cicero*—"Many a fiery *Alp*."

When a common noun is used with the article *the*, to designate a well-known place, it becomes a proper noun ; as, The Battery.—The Park.

A common noun is sometimes made proper by personification ; as, *Mercy* interposed in our behalf.

A *collective noun* is the name of a collection of objects of the same kind ; as,

Mob,	flock,	party,	company,
clan,	school,	family,	multitude,
crew,	army,	library,	committee.

#### MODIFICATIONS OF THE NOUN.

The modifications of nouns are *gender*, *number*, *person*, and *case*.

##### GENDER.

*Gender* is a distinction in nouns with regard to sex.

There are three genders ; the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

The *masculine gender* denotes the male sex ;

The *feminine gender* denotes the female sex ;

The *neuter gender* denotes that the object is not distinguished by sex.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Man,	woman.	Book,
King,	queen.	camp,
Stag,	hind.	motion,
Actor,	actress.	lesson,
Male child,	female child.	peace,
Landlord,	landlady.	duty,
Widower,	widow.	carriage.

## METHODS OF EXPRESSING SEX.

There are three methods of expressing the distinctions of sex.

## 1. By words different in every syllable :

Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Bachelor,	maid.	Lord,	} lady.
Beau,	belle.	Gentleman,	
Boy,	girl.	Man,	woman.
Brother,	sister.	Master,	mistress.
Buck,	doe.	Milter,	spawner.
Boar,	sow.	Nephew,	niece.
Bull,	cow.	Papa,	mamma.
Cock,	hen.	Rake,	jilt.
Colt,	filly.	Ram,	ewe.
Dog,	bitch.	Sire,	dam.
Drake,	duck.	Sir,	madam.
Earl,	countess.	Sloven,	slut.
Father,	mother.	Son,	daughter.
Friar, }	nun.	Stag,	hind.
Monk, }		Steer,	heifer.
Gander,	goose.	Swain,	nymph.
Hart,	roe.	Uncle,	aunt.
Horse,	mare.	Wizard,	witch.
Husband,	wife.	Youth,	damsel.
King,	queen.	Young man,	maiden.
Lad,	lass.		

## 2. By prefixing or affixing a distinct word :

Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>Buck</i> -rabbit,	<i>doe</i> -rabbit.	<i>Male</i> child,	<i>female</i> child.
<i>Cock</i> -sparrow,	<i>hen</i> -sparrow.	<i>Man</i> -kind,	<i>woman</i> -kind.
Grand <i>father</i> ,	grand <i>mother</i> .	<i>Man</i> -servant,	<i>maid</i> -servant.
Grand <i>sire</i> ,	grand <i>am</i> .	Pea- <i>cock</i> ,	pea- <i>hen</i> .
<i>He</i> -goat,	<i>she</i> -goat.	School- <i>boy</i> ,	school- <i>girl</i> .
Land <i>lord</i> ,	land <i>lady</i> .	Serving- <i>man</i> ,	serving- <i>maid</i> .



## 3. By different syllabic terminations :

Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Abbot,	abbess.	Patron,	patroness.
Actor,	actress.	Peer,	peeress.
Adulterer,	adulteress.	Poet,	poetess.
Ambassador	ambadress.	Priest,	priestess.
Arbiter,	arbitress.	Prince,	princess.
Author,	authoress.	Prior,	prioress.
Baron,	baroness.	Progenitor,	progenitress.
Benefactor,	benefactress.	Prophet,	prophetess.
Caterer,	cateress.	Protector,	protectress.
Chanter,	chantress.	Seamster,	seamstress.
Conductor,	conductress.	Shepherd,	shepherdess.
Count,	countess.	Songster,	songstress.
Deacon,	deaconess.	Sorcerer,	sorceress.
Director,	directress.	Tailor,	tailoress.
Duke,	duchess.	Tiger,	tigress.
Editor,	editress.	Traitor,	traitress.
Elector,	electress.	Tutor,	tutoress.
Emperor,	empress.	Votary,	votaress.
Enchanter,	enchantress.	Viscount,	viscountess.
Founder,	foundress.	Marquis,	marchioness.
Giant,	giantess.	Bridegroom,	bride.
God,	goddess.	Widower,	widow.
Governor,	governess.	Hero,	heroine.
Hebrew,	Hebrewess.	Czar,	czarina.
Heir,	heiress.	Sultan,	{ sultana.
Host,	hostess.		{ sultaness.
Hunter,	huntress.	Don,	donna.
Idolator,	idolatress.	Landgrave,	landgravine.
Instructor,	instructress.	Margrave,	margravine.
Jew,	Jewess.	Testator,	testatrix.
Lion,	lioness.	Executer,	{ executress.
Mayor,	mayoress.		{ executrix.
Monitor,	monitress.	Administrator,	administratrix.
Negro,	negress.		



## OBSERVATIONS ON GENDER.

1. Gender in grammar is founded on the distinction of sex in animated nature, and the absence of sex in things destitute of animal life.

2. Some words relating to our own species, are applicable to both sexes ; as, *parent, child, cousin, friend, neighbor, teacher, philosopher, and warrior*. The gender of such nouns can often be determined by the context. When this cannot be done, they may be called, in grammatic solution, masculine. When a noun in the plural number necessarily includes both sexes, it may be called masculine and feminine.

3. When the sex of small animals need not be expressed, the noun is construed as neuter gender.

4. When a collective noun conveys unity of idea, or takes the plural form, it is of the neuter gender ; but when it conveys plurality of idea without the plural form, it follows the gender of the objects composing the collection.

5. Proper nouns follow the gender of the common nouns which they represent.

6. Generic nouns, such as *man, the elephant, the horse, the dog, the cow, the cat, the hawk, the goose*, which include both sexes, are sometimes called *epicene* nouns. The first four are construed as masculine, and the last four as feminine. When the word itself does not point to the leading gender, the nature of the species will furnish a guide to the proper designation. Large, strong, or energetic animals may be construed as masculine, while small, feeble, and mild animals are construed as feminine.

7. By a figure of speech, called *personification*, some nouns naturally neuter are spoken of as masculine or feminine ; as, We viewed the *sun* when *he* was setting, and the *moon* when *she* was rising.—I prefer this *boat*, on account of *her* exceeding beauty and speed. On this fiction depends much of the force and beauty of the English language ; yet definite rules cannot be given to guide learners unerringly in the application of this figure of speech. Those objects, however, which are distinguished for masculine qualities, such as strength, boldness, or energy, are generally construed as masculine, and those which are distinguished for feminine qualities, such as beauty, mildness, or fecundity, are construed as feminine.

## NUMBER.

*Number* is the singular or plural expression of objects.

There are two numbers; the *singular* and the *plural*. The *singular number* denotes one object.

The *plural number* denotes more than one object; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Man,	men.	Horse,	horses.
Foot,	feet.	Swallow,	swallows.
Hat,	hats.	Lash,	lashes.
Book,	books.	Brush,	brushes.
Sea,	seas.	Knife,	knives.
Hope,	hopes.	Child,	children.

## GENERAL RULES FOR FORMING THE PLURAL.

Regular nouns form their plural by adding *s* or *es* to the singular.

When the singular ends in a letter which readily coalesces in sound with *s*, the plural is generally formed by adding *s*, without increasing the number of syllables.

When the singular ends with a letter which does not readily coalesce in sound with *s*, the plural is formed by adding *s* to final *e*, and *es* to other terminations.

*S*, used in the formation of the plural, has the sound of *z*, except after *f*, *k*, *p*, *t*, *ph*, and *c* and *ch* hard.

## PARTICULAR RULES FOR FORMING THE PLURAL.

When the singular ends in *a* or *e*, preceded by a consonant, the plural is formed by adding *s*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Era,	eras.	Diploma,	diplomas.
Zebra,	zebras.	Saddle,	saddles.
Spade,	spades.	Example,	examples.
Hive,	hives.	Medicine,	medicines.
Vale,	vales.	Signature,	signatures.

When the singular ends in *a*, *e*, *u*, or *w*, preceded by a vowel, the plural is formed by adding *s*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Pea,	peas.	Idea,	ideas.
Bee,	bees.	Bureau,	bureaus.
Foe,	foes.	Sorrow,	sorrows.
Cue,	cues.	Landau,	landaus.

When the singular ends in *y*, preceded by a vowel, the plural is formed by adding *s*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Clay,	clays.	Valley,	valleys.
Key,	keys.	Turkey,	turkeys.
Boy,	boys.	Money,	moneys.
Viceroy,	viceroyes.	Attorney,	attorneys.

When the singular ends in *y* preceded by a consonant, the plural is formed by changing *y* to *i*, and adding *es*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Fly,	flies.	Piracy,	piracies.
Berry,	berries.	Prodigy,	prodigies.
City,	cities.	Destiny,	destinies.
Proxy,	proxies.	Liberty,	liberties.

When the singular ends in *o*, preceded by a consonant, the plural is formed by adding *es*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Hero,	heroes.	Tornado,	tornadoes.
Negro,	negroes.	Potato,	potatoes.
Echo,	echoes.	Flamingo,	flamingoes.
Veto,	vetoed.	Buffalo,	buffaloes.
Motto,	mottoes.	Manifesto,	manifestoes.

The exceptions to the preceding rule are found in words not fully Anglicised; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Solo,	solos.	Proviso,	provisos.
Halo,	halos.	Rotundo,	rotundos.
Tyro,	tyros.	Quarto,	quartos.
Canto,	cantos.	Duodecimo,	duodecimos.
Grotto,	grottos.	Octavo,	octavos.
Junto,	juntos.	Memento,	mementos.
Stucco,	stuccos.	Virtuoso,	{ virtuosos. virtuosi.
Portico,	porticos.		

When the singular ends in *o* or in *oo*, pronounced as in *too*, or in *o* preceded by a vowel, the plural is formed by adding *s*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Bamboo,	bamboos.	Folio,	folios.
Cuckoo,	cuckoos.	Olio,	olios.
Tattoo,	tattoos.	Nuncio,	nuncios.
Two,	twos.	Genio,	genios.

When the singular ends in a consonant which readily coalesces in sound with *s*, the plural is formed by adding *s*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Slab,	slabs.	Inkstand,	inkstands.
Sled,	sleds.	Starling,	starlings.
Stag,	stags.	Sandal,	sandals.
Well,	wells.	Diagram,	diagrams.
Brim,	brims.	Chicken,	chickens.
Chin,	chins.	Winter,	winters.

#### THE PLURALIZING *s* WITH THE HISSING SOUND.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Muff,	muffs.	Reproof,	reproofs.
Lock,	locks.	Assault,	assaults.
Ship,	ships.	Epitaph,	epitaphs.
Hat,	hats.	Critic,	critics.
Coat,	coats.	Monarch,	monarchs.

When the singular ends in *e*, following a consonant which does not readily coalesce in sound with *s*, the plural is formed by adding *s*, which, with the *e*, forms a separate syllable; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Lace,	laces.	Nurse,	nurses.
Voice,	voices.	Maze,	mazes.
Page,	pages.	Difference,	differences.
Rose,	roses.	Average,	averages.

When the singular ends in *x*, *s*, *ss*, *sh*, or *ch* soft, the plural is formed by adding *es*, which forms a separate syllable; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Tax,	taxes.	Branch,	branches.
Gas,	gases.	Batch,	batches.
Kiss,	kisses.	Atlas,	atlases.
Lash,	lashes.	Witness,	witnesses.
Brush,	brushes.	Ignoramus,	ignoramuses.

The following nouns form the plural by changing *f* or *fe* into *ves*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Elf,	elves.	Sheaf,	sheaves.
Self,	selves.	Loaf,	loaves.
Shelf,	shelves.	Thief,	thieves.
Wolf,	wolves.	Beef,	beeves.
Calf,	calves.	Knife,	knives.
Half,	halves.	Life,	lives.
Leaf,	leaves.	Wife,	wives.

The following nouns form the plural by changing the vowel or diphthong between the consonants :

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Man,	men.	Goose,	geese.
Woman,	women.	Louse,	lice.
Foot,	feet.	Mouse,	mice.
Tooth,	teeth.		

When a compound noun ends with any of these words, the plural is formed in the same manner; as, *Gentleman*, *gentlemen*; *eye-tooth*, *eye-teeth*.

*German*, *Mussulman*, *Turkoman*, and *talisman*, form the plural by adding *s*, they not being compounds of *man*.

*Ox* and *child* form the plural in *en*; as, *Ox*, *oxen*; *child*, *children*.

Some nouns have two plurals of different significations; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Plural.
Brother,	brothers,	brethren.
Die,	dies,	dice.
Penny,	pennies,	pence.
Index,	indexes,	indices.
Genius,	geniuses,	genii.

*Brothers* denote sons of the same parents; *brethren*, individuals of the same church or society. *Dies* denote steel instruments for stamping figures; *dice*, cubes used in gaming. *Pennies* denote pieces of coin; *pence*, their value in computation. *Indexes* denote tables of contents; *indices*, signs in algebra. *Geniuses* denote persons of genius; *genii*, imaginary spirits.

Such expressions as *fourpence*, *sixpence*, *ninepence*, when used as names of coin, are singular, and have a regular plural; as, A sixpence.—Three *fourpences* or two *sixpences* make a shilling.

COMPOUND NOUNS, AND DERIVATIVES IN *ful*.

Compound nouns, in which the principal word occurs first, pluralize the first word ; as,

Singular.	Plural.
Father-in-law,	fathers-in-law.
Aid-de-camp,	aids-de-camp.
Commander-in-chief,	commanders-in-chief.
Court-martial,	courts-martial.
Knight-errant,	knights-errant.
Cousin-german,	cousins-german.
Hanger-on,	hangers-on.
Going-forth,	goings-forth.

Compound nouns, in which the principal word occurs last, pluralize the last word ; as,

Singular.	Plural.
Mouse-trap,	mouse-traps.
Man servant,	man servants.
Fellow-servant,	fellow-servants.
Piano-forte,	piano-fortes.
Queen-consort,	queen-consorts.
Manslayer,	manslayers.
Outpouring,	outpourings.
Ingathering,	ingatherings.
Overflowing,	overflowings.

Derivative nouns of measure in *ful* pluralize the last syllable ; as, *Spoonful, spoonfuls ; handful, handfuls ; cupful, cupfuls ; mouthful, mouthfuls ; pailful, pailfuls.*

## NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

Nouns are defective in number, when they lack the singular or the plural form. They are of several classes :

1. Those used in the singular form and meaning ; as,

Gold,	cloth,	sloth,	attendance,
pitch,	love,	darkness,	temperance,
rice,	goodness,	violence,	eternity,
cotton,	pride,	innocence,	eucharist.

The names of things which are weighed and measured, belong to this class ; although many of them admit of a plural, to express the several varieties ; as, *Sugars, teas, cottons.*



## 2. Those used in the plural form and meaning ; as,

Amends,	drawers,	lees,	shambles,
archives,	dregs,	lungs,	shears,
ashes,	eaves,	matins,	snuffers,
assets,	embers,	nippers,	spectacles,
bitters,	entrails,	obsequies,	thanks,
bowels,	failings,	orgies,	tidings,
breeches,	folks,	pinchers,	tongs,
calends,	forceps,	pliers,	tweezers,
chops,	goods,	fluids,	vespers,
clothes,	goggles,	riches,	vituals,
customs,	hatches,	scissors,	vitals.
downs,	ides,		

*Pleiads* and *lungs* admit of the singular ; as, The lost *pleiad*.—The left *lung*. *Bitter* is sometimes used in the singular ; as, This bark makes a good *bitter*. *Customs*, *drawers*, *hatches*, *nippers*, *pinchers*, and *snuffers*, are also used in the singular number, but not with the meaning which they bear when used in the plural.

3. Those which have the singular form, but a singular or a plural construction ; as, *Deer*, *sheep*, *swine*, *grouse*, *vermin*.

*Fowl* and *fish* are each the name of a genus of animals, and as such they have no plural form ; but when used to express the different species altogether, or individual specimens of any particular species, they have the plural form ; as, The *fowls* of the air.—The *fishes* of the sea.—Six *fowls*.—Three small *fishes*.

*Shad*, *herring*, *mackerel*, *haddock*, &c., are used in the singular form in expressing the species, or in speaking of the animals in bulk ; as, The *shad*.—The *herring*.—This fish-monger sells *shad* and *herring* by the barrel, by the keg, and by the dozen. When more than one of the animals are spoken of individually, the words should have the plural form ; as, We caught ten *trouts*, and bought four *salmons*. Usage, however, is unsettled in relation to the last part of this rule, as we often meet with such nouns in the singular form combined with a word in the plural ; as, Three *pike*.—Four *salmon*.—Many *tench*.

*Brace*, *couple*, *pair*, *dozen*, *score*, *hundred*, and *thousand*, are construed as singular or plural ; as, A *brace* ; two *brace*.—A *score* ; six *score*.—A *hundred* ; six *hundred* ; but the plural form is used without a numeral adjective after *by* or *in* ;

as, By *braces*; in *braces*.—By *couples*; in *couples*.—By *dozens*, *scores*, *hundreds*, or *thousands*.

*Cattle* is always plural. *People* is construed as plural, unless it is preceded by *one*, *a*, *an*, *this*, or *that*.

4. Those which have the plural form, and are construed as singular or plural; as,

Alms,	wages,	species,	shambles,
means,	pains,	congeries,	bellows,
odds,	amends,	superfices,	gallows.
riches,	series,		

*Pains*, *riches*, and *wages*, when preceded by *much*, are construed as singular. In other cases, they are generally taken as plural.

*Means* and *amends*, referring to one object, are singular; to more than one, plural. *Mean* is used to express the middle between two extremes. *Bellows* and *gallows* are mostly construed as singular. *Bellowses* and *gallowses* are sanctioned by good authority; yet it may be unsafe to use this form of the plural in some parts of the United States. *Shambles* is generally used as plural.

5. Those which have the plural form, and are construed in the singular sense; as,

News,	mumps,	ethics,	pneumatics,
billiards,	measles,	optics,	metaphysics,
twos,	bots,	physics,	mechanics,
molasses,	hysterics,	politics,	mathematics.

#### THE PLURAL OF PROPER NOUNS.

When nouns are strictly used as proper nouns, they have no plural; but, when they are reduced to a species of common noun by the article *the*, they are used in the plural number; as, *The Washingtons*, *the Adamses*, *the Calos*, *the twelve Cæsars*, *the Livies*.

The proper names of nations, tribes, societies, and communities, are generally plural, and, when spoken of, are usually construed with the article *the*, or with a numeral adjective; as, *The Greeks*.—*The Jesuits*.—*The Freemasons*.—*The Lutherans*.—*The Baltimoreans*.—*Six Greeks*, &c. Such words are also used in the singular number with *one*, *a*, *an*, and *the*; as, *A Greek*.—*One Greek*.—*The Greek*, &c.



When a title is prefixed to a proper noun, to designate a class of persons, the name is varied to form the plural; as, The Miss *Hamiltons*.—The Mrs. *Howards*.—The two Mr. *Smiths*. When the persons are referred to individually, the title is varied; as, The *Misses* Lucinda and Emeline Harrison.—*Messrs.* Edward and Frederick Hamlin.—*Messrs.* Cornish, Lamport & Co.—The *Judges* Oakley and King.—The *Lords* Lyndhurst and Brougham.—The *Generals* Scott and Wool.

The letters of the alphabet should be written as in the following table :

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
A,	Aes,	Jay,	Jays,	Ess,	Esses,
Bee,	Bees,	Kay,	Kays,	Tee,	Tees,
Cee,	Cees,	Ell,	Ells,	U,	Ues,
Dee,	Dees,	Em,	Ems,	Vee,	Vees,
E,	Ees,	En,	Ens,	Double-u,	Double-ues,
Eff,	Effs,	O,	Oes,	Ex,	Exes,
Gee,	Gees,	Pee,	Pees,	Wy,	Wies,
Aitch,	Aitches,	Kue,	Kues,	Zee,	Zees,
I,	Ies,	Ar,	Ars,		

#### NOUNS NOT FULLY ANGLICIZED.

Some nouns adopted into our language without change of form, still retain their original plural, although some of them have also a regular English plural. Those having an English plural are marked in the following tables with the letter R.

Latin nouns in *a* form the plural by changing *a* to *æ*. Greek nouns in *a* form the plural by adding *ta*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Alumna,	alumnæ.	Macula,	maculæ
Anathema,	anathemata.—R.	Miasma,	miasmata.
Lamina,	laminæ.	Nebula,	nebulae.
Larva,	larvæ.	Vertebra,	vertebræ.

Nouns in *um* or *on* form the plural by changing *um* or *on* to *a*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Animalculum,	animalcula.—R.	Memorandum,	memoranda.—R
Arcanum,	arcana.	Menstruum,	menstrua.—R
Automaton,	automata.—R.	Momentum,	momenta.—R
Criterion,	criteria.	Phenomenon,	phenomena.
Datum,	data.	Scholium,	scholia.—R.
Desideratum,	desiderata.—R.	Spectrum,	spectra.—R.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Effluvium,	effluvia.	Speculum,	specula.—R.
Encomium,	encomia.—R.	Stratum,	strata.—R.
Erratum,	errata.	Succedaneum,	succedanea.—R.
Gymnasium,	gymnasia.—R.	Trapezium,	trapezia.—R.
Medium,	media.—R.	Vinculum,	vincula.—R.

Latin nouns in *us* form the plural by changing *us* to *i*, or to *era*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Alumnus,	alumni.	Genus,	genera.
Calculus,	calculi.	Ignis fatuus,	ignes fatui.
Focus,	foci.—R.	Magus,	magi.
Fungus,	fungi.—R.	Radius,	radii.
Genius,	genii.—R.	Stimulus,	stimuli.

Latin nouns in *is* form the plural by changing *is* to *es*.  
Greek nouns in *is* form the plural by changing *is* to *ides*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Amanuensis,	amanuenses.	Emphasis,	emphases.
Analysis,	analyses.	Ephemeris,	ephemerides.
Antithesis,	antitheses	Epidermis,	epidermides.
Aphis,	aphides.	Fascis,	fascies.
Apsis,	apsides.	Hypothesis,	hypotheses.
Ascaris,	ascarides.	Metamorphosis,	metamorphoses.
Axis,	axes.	Oasis,	oases.
Basis,	bases.	Parenthesis,	parentheses.
Cantharis,	cantharides.	Phasis,	phases.
Chrysalis,	chrysalides.	Praxis,	praxes.
Crisis.	crises.	Synopsis,	synopses.
Diæresis,	diæreses.	Synthesis,	syntheses.
Diesis,	dieses.	Syrtis,	syrtes.
Ellipsis,	ellipses.	Thesis,	theses.

Nouns in *x* form the plural by changing *x* to *ces*, and *ex* to *ices*; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Apex,	apices.—R.	Helix,	helices.—R.
Appendix,	appendices.—R.	Index,	indices.—R.
Calyx,	calyces.—R.	Matrix,	matrices.—R.
Calx,	calces.—R.	Radix,	radices.—R.
Caudex,	caudices.—R.	Vertex,	vertices.—R.
Cycatrix	cycatrices.—R.	Vortex,	vortices.—R.

The following nouns cannot be regularly classified :

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Bandit,	banditti.	Monsieur,	messieurs.
Beau,	beaux.—R.	Stamen,	stamina.—R.
Cherub,	cherubim.—R.	Virtuoso,	virtuosi.—R.
Seraph,	seraphim.—R.		

#### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH USED AS NOUNS.

When other parts of speech are used as nouns, they either want the plural, or form it regularly like common nouns of the same endings ; as, His affairs go on at *sixes* and *sevens*.—The *yeas* and *nays*.—The *ayes* and *noes*.—The *ins* and the *outs*.—His *ands* and his *buts*.—By *halves*, *twos*, *fourths*, *tenths*.—The *whies* and the *bies*.—*Eatings*, *sayings*, and *doings*.

#### PERSON.

*Person* is the relation which nouns sustain to sentences.

There are three persons ; the *first*, the *second*, and the *third*.

The *first person* denotes the person who speaks.

The *second person* denotes the person spoken to.

The *third person* denotes the person or thing spoken of.

#### CASE.

*Case* is the relation which nouns sustain to certain other words in sentences.

There are four cases ; the *nominative*, the *possessive*, the *objective*, and the *independent*.

The *nominative case* is the agent or the subject of the verb.

The *possessive case* denotes possession or ownership.

The *objective case* denotes the passive relation in which a word is governed by a transitive word or by a preposition.

The *independent case* denotes that the word is free from any constructive dependence.

## SYNTAX.

SYNTAX relates to the agreement and the government of words, and to their appropriate arrangement in sentences.

This part of grammar consists chiefly of rules, deduced from the customary forms of speech.

A rule, in its general application, is a definite direction.

An exception to a rule is a deviation from it in some particular case.

---

## ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

ETYMOLOGY relates to words as individual means of expressing thought, and syntax, to the manner of their combination. These two branches of grammar are ever associated in the use of language, and should ever be associated in theory; especially as one branch of the subject cannot be fully comprehended without a knowledge of the other.

The parts of speech will be treated in the order of their importance in the *structure* of sentences. The etymology will be first presented, and then the syntax. In all cases, examples of illustration will be given, together with concise forms of analysis.

---

## THE ARTICLE.

An *article* is a word placed before nouns to modify their application.

There are two articles; *a* or *an* and *the*.

*A* or *an* is the *indefinite article*.

*The* is the *definite article*.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

## THE ARTICLE AND THE NOUN.

1. Common and collective nouns without an article or other definitive to modify their application, are taken in a wide or general sense.

2. *A* or *an* is used to modify the application of the noun, so as to point out one person or thing, without distinguishing the object from all others of the same class.

3. *The* is used to modify the application of the noun, so as to point out one object or more, and to distinguish it or them from all others of the same class.

General.	Indefinite.	Definite.	
President,	a president,	the president,	the presidents.
Merchant,	a merchant,	the merchant,	the merchants.
Mechanic,	a mechanic,	the mechanic,	the mechanics.
Planter,	a planter,	the planter,	the planters.
Professor,	a professor,	the professor,	the professors.
Stranger,	a stranger,	the stranger,	the strangers.
Virtue,	a virtue,	the virtue,	the virtues.
Precept,	a precept,	the precept,	the precepts.

4. *A* is used before words beginning with a consonant sound ; as,

A bearer.	A journey.	A question.	A yeoman.
A casket.	A kingdom.	A reason.	A zealot.
A danger.	A landscape.	A sojourn.	A unit.
A fabrie.	A machine.	A turkey.	A usage.
A garment.	A napkin.	A visit.	A eulogy.
A history.	A pilot.	A workman.	A universe.

5. *An* is used before words beginning with a vowel sound ; as,

An abode.	An invoice.	An oath.	An hour.
An acre.	An office.	An ointment.	An heir.
An edict.	An orbit.	An outrage.	An heiress.
An empire.	An ulcer.	An owl.	An honor.
An income.	An umpire.	An oyster.	An hostler.

6. *The* is used before generic names of animals, trees, and plants, to indicate the particular species in contradistinction to other species ; as,

The horse.	The eagle.	The whale.	The beech.
The cow.	The goose.	The tortoise.	The currant.
The dog.	The spider.	The salmon.	The rose.
The cat.	The adder.	The frog.	The tulip.

7. *The* is used before the names of nations, tribes, sects, societies, and communities. *The* is also used, as well as *a* or *an*, before the same words, to designate a particular one, or some one of the class ; as,

Nations, &c.	A particular one.	Some one.
The Medes,	the Mede,	a Mede.
The Winnebagoes,	the Winnebago,	a Winnebago.
The Tartars,	the Tartar,	a Tartar.
The Stoics,	the Stoic,	a Stoic.
The Moravians,	the Moravian,	a Moravian,
The Rechabites,	the Rechabite,	a Rechabite.
The Bostonians,	the Bostonian,	a Bostonian,
The Americans,	the American,	an American.

8. *The* is used before the plural names of mountains ; as, *The Alleghamies.*—*The Andes.*

9. *The* is used before nouns to distinguish persons emphatically ; as,

The Psalmist.	The Virgin.	The Apostle.
The Evangelist.	The Prophet.	The Saviour.

10. *A* or *an* is used before proper nouns, to distinguish one person of a similar character or of the same name. *The* is used in like manner to distinguish one person or more ; as,

The original.	A similar character.		Similar characters.
Cicero,	a Cicero,	the Cicero,	the Ciceros.
Nero,	a Nero,	the Nero,	the Neros.
Newton,	a Newton,	the Newton,	the Newtons.
Franklin,	a Franklin,	the Franklin,	the Franklins.
Adams,	an Adams,	the Adams,	the Adamses.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

A president,	the president,	the presidents.
A merchant.	the merchant,	the merchants.
A virtue,	the virtue,	the virtues.
A beaver,	the beaver,	the beavers.
A fabric,	the fabric,	the fabrics.
An abode,	the abode,	the abodes.
An hour,	the hour,	the hours.
A horse,	the horse,	the horses.
An eagle,	the eagle,	the eagles.
A whale,	the whale,	the whales.
A rose,	the rose,	the roses.
A Mede,	the Mede,	the Medes.
An apostle,	the apostle,	the apostles.
A Cicero,	the Cicero,	the Ciceros.

## REMARKS AND SUGGESTIONS.

Instances of the association of the parts of speech are denominated **SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES**, and such examples, in the succeeding part of this grammar, whether thus headed or not, are proposed as models for imitation, as well as for parsing.

Analyzing sentences by formulas of parsing may enable pupils to detect errors in composition; but practice in the construction of sentences must be chiefly relied on, to secure a ready and correct use of language. A mere theoretic grammarian is like a mere theoretic mechanic: both may be tolerable judges of jobs executed by others; but neither can execute properly a simple piece of work himself. It is generally known that not one person in twenty who have delved through the ordinary course of grammatic learning, can compose correctly twenty consecutive lines on one subject. This state of English scholarship does not result from errors in the doctrines of grammar, but from want of practice. The several associations of the parts of speech are so arranged and presented in this work, that pupils may learn the theory and the practice together.

In carrying out this plan of instruction, teachers will discover that the verbal resources of their pupils are so limited that very little can be done without reference to a vocabulary of words grammatically classified, and correctly defined. Such a work is "**HAZEN'S NEW SPELLER AND DEFINER**;" and it is hoped that that work will be used with this grammar, especially in the higher classes.



## Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

<i>A president,</i>	<i>the president,</i>	<i>the presidents.</i>
<i>A virtue,</i>	<i>the virtue,</i>	<i>the virtues.</i>

*A* is the indefinite article, and belongs to *president*. Rule.—The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

*President* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *president*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*President* is parsed as in the preceding example.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *Presidents*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Presidents* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person.

The proposed exercises will secure accurate spelling, and a stock of words which will be ever ready to light upon the tongue, or drop from the fingers. When pupils can write simple and compound sentences with facility, they are supplied with the elements of consecutive compositions, and these they may then attempt with a reasonable prospect of success.

The formulas of parsing in this work are as concise as they can well be; yet are they minute enough to answer the purpose in every particular. The author has aimed at precision and elegance in his formulas, and observing teachers cannot fail to perceive that pupils must improve in style by repeating them.

Long formulas of parsing confuse uncultivated minds, and are serious obstacles to improvement. Etymological definitions should, therefore, constitute no part of the formulas. Explanations occasionally afforded, and questions proposed before or during the exercise of parsing, are better means of impressing the doctrines of grammar.

Recitations in grammar should be conducted with care and precision. Pupils should use, in all cases of definition and analysis, the very words of the text, and these should be uttered with correct pro-



*A* is the indefinite article, and belongs to *virtue*. Rule.—The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

*Virtue* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *virtue*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Virtue* is parsed as in the preceding example.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *virtues*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Virtues* is a common noun, neuter gender, plural number, third person.

nunciation, quantity, and intonation. When a question is proposed, pupils should not be permitted to insert the word *because* before the answer.

To secure correct recitations, the class should be broken into each lesson, by repeating it in concert until every syllable is uttered satisfactorily. This should always be done before pupils are required to study it individually.

In conducting the recitations, no one plan need to be invariably pursued; but, to secure attention and to keep the slow and the dilatory from falling behind, each member of the class may generally be required to repeat a distinct portion, and the whole class may immediately repeat the same in concert. Every word should be uttered in pure speaking sounds.

Obs.—The article is similar to the adjective in belonging or referring to the noun; but these parts of speech are so different in several respects, that no judicious grammarian would think of referring them to the same class of words. The articles have no specific meaning, but serve simply as indexes to nouns; whereas adjectives have distinct significations, which can be clearly explained by other words, and which express some quality, characteristic, or number of the nouns with which they are associated. The articles are always accessory words in the structures of the language, while adjectives are essentials or accessories according to the manner of their use.

## THE ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word added to a noun to express some quality, characteristic, or number ; as,

A <i>good</i> man.	The <i>iminent</i> danger.
A <i>timid</i> animal.	The <i>long</i> sermon.
A <i>sad</i> calamity.	The <i>wooden</i> vessel.
A <i>vivid</i> flash.	The <i>circular</i> theatre.
A <i>lonely</i> place.	The <i>French</i> fashion.
An <i>indigent</i> woman.	The <i>two</i> candidates.
The <i>rich</i> merchant.	The <i>first</i> intimation.

## CLASSIFICATION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are divided into *descriptive*, *proper*, and *numeral*.

## DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

A *descriptive adjective* is a common epithet denoting chiefly quality or kind, condition, tendency, material, form, time, location, position, or direction.

## 1. Adjectives of quality or kind.

A bold adventure.	A heroic act.
A rude structure.	A clamorous mob.
An acrid substance.	A gradual descent.
An adroit mechanic.	An arable soil.
A chilly wind.	An arrogant youth.
A manly reply.	A competent witness.
An artful story.	A circumspect watchman.
An artless tale.	A plenary indulgence.

## 2. Adjectives of condition or state.

A glad heart.	An angry mood.
A ripe fig.	A jolly party.
A wealthy family.	A prosperous country.
An attentive audience.	A sick patient.
A hopeless state.	A lowering sky.
A hopeful condition.	A slippery pavement.

## 3. Adjectives having a tendency to.

The adhesive plaster.	The delusory hopes.
The corruptive policy.	The suffocating vapor.
The impressive discourses.	The irritating remarks.
The imitative faculties.	The preparatory lecture.

## 4. Adjectives denoting material.

A wooden dish.	A stone wall.
A mahogany table.	A wire cage.
An iron fence.	A cotton dress.
A pewter basin.	A leather apron.
A birchen rod.	A gold watch.

## 5. Adjectives of form.

An oblong square.	A tall spire.
An oval figure.	A spreading beech.
A concave surface.	A wide field.
A circular gallery.	A mountainous country.

## 6. Adjectives of time or duration.

An hourly stage.	The annual flood.
A daily paper.	The temporary inconvenience.
A weekly publication.	The perpetual snows.
A monthly stipend.	The everlasting Father.
A yearly payment.	Eternal duration.
A quarterly review.	Endless bliss.

## 7. Adjectives of location, position, or direction.

The eastern states.	The inclined plane.
The western range.	The rising sun.
The upper tier.	The leaning tower.
The under side.	The south wind.
The lateral canal.	The diagonal road.
The distant hills.	The lofty peak.

## PROPER ADJECTIVES.

*Proper adjectives* are formed from proper nouns ; as,

Proper nouns.	Proper adjectives.
Europe,	a European production.
Asia,	an Asiatic custom.
Africa,	the African race.
Britain,	the British nation.
France,	the French language.
Spain,	the Spanish armada.
Rome,	the Roman senate.
Plato,	the Platonic philosophy.
Presbyter,	the Presbyterian church.
New York,	the New York police.

1. Proper adjectives can generally be used as nouns, when they do not require an additional syllable in the plural number ; as,

Proper adjectives.	Common nouns.	
Mexican,	a Mexican,	the Mexicans.
Indian,	an Indian,	Indians.
Hungarian,	a Hungarian,	the Hungarians.
Baltimorean,	a Baltimorean,	the Baltimoreans.
Episcopalian,	an Episcopalian,	the Episcopalians.
Armenian,	an Armenian,	the Armenians.

2. Sometimes the gentile noun has fewer syllables than the corresponding adjective ; as,

Country.	Gentile nouns.		Proper adjectives.
Denmark,	a Dane,	the Danes,	Danish.
Gaul,	a Gaul,	the Gauls,	Gallic.
Sweden,	a Swede,	the Swedes,	Swedish.
Turkey,	a Turk,	the Turks,	Turkish.
Poland,	a Pole,	the Poles,	Polish.
Morocco,	a Moor,	the Moors,	Moorish.

3. *English, French, Irish, Scotch, Dutch, and Welsh*, when used as the names of languages without an article,

are construed as nouns in the singular number ; but, when used with an article, they are adjectives, a noun being understood.

## Names of languages.

## Proper adjectives.

English,	the English	= the English nation or people.
French,	the French	= the French nation or people.
Irish,	the Irish	= the Irish people.
Scotch,	the Scotch	= the Scotch people.
Dutch,	the Dutch	= the Dutch people.
Welsh,	the Welsh	= the Welsh people.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

A *numeral adjective* expresses number.

The numeral adjectives are divided into *cardinal*, *ordinal*, and *multiplicative*.

A *cardinal numeral adjective* expresses one, or the whole number from one to the number taken inclusive.

An *ordinal numeral adjective* expresses a single number of order.

A *multiplicative numeral adjective* expresses a whole number composed of distinct parts, or the number of principal agents concerned in a compact.

Cardinal.		Ordinal.		Multiplicative.	
One	=1.	First	=1st.	Single	=alone.
Two	=2.	Second	=2d.	Double	=twofold.
Three	=3.	Third	=3d.	Triple	=threefold.
Four	=4.	Fourth	=4th.	Quadruple	=fourfold.
Five	=5.	Fifth	=5th.	Quintuple	=fivefold.
Six	=6.	Sixth	=6th.	Sextuple	=sixfold.
Seven	=7.	Seventh	=7th.	Septuple	=sevenfold.
Eight	=8.	Eighth	=8th.	Octuple	=eightfold.
Nine	=9.	Ninth	=9th.	Nonuple	=ninefold.
Ten	=10.	Tenth	=10th.	Decuple	=tenfold.
Twenty-one	=21.	Twenty-first	=21st.	Thirty-fold.	
Thirty-three	=33.	Thirty-third	=33d.	Sixty-fold.	
Forty-six	=46.	Forty-sixth	=46th.	Hundred-fold.	

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Comparison is the variation of an adjective, to express quality or characteristic in different degrees.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive degree* is the simple state of the adjective.

The *comparative* denotes a greater or a less degree.

The *superlative* denotes the greatest or the least degree.

Adjectives of one syllable are usually compared by adding *r* or *er* to form the comparative, and *st* or *est* to form the superlative; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Tall,	taller,	tallest.
Light,	lighter,	lightest.
Small,	smaller,	smallest.
Large,	larger,	largest.

Adjectives of two or more syllables are usually compared by prefixing to the positive *more* or *less* to form the comparative, and *most* or *least* to form the superlative; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Stupid;	more stupid,	most stupid.
Civil,	more civil,	most civil.
Slender,	more slender,	most slender.
Clever,	more clever,	most clever.
Stupid,	less stupid,	least stupid.
Civil,	less civil,	least civil.
Slender,	less slender,	least slender.
Clever,	less clever,	least clever.
Elegant,	more elegant,	most elegant.
Eloquent,	more eloquent,	most eloquent.
Laudable,	more laudable,	most laudable.
Ponderous	more ponderous,	most ponderous.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Elegant,	less elegant,	least elegant.
Eloquent,	less eloquent,	least eloquent.
Laudable,	less laudable,	least laudable.
Ponderous,	less ponderous,	least ponderous.

Many adjectives of two syllables ending in *y* or *e* mute, may be compared by *r*, *er*, *st*, *est*, and by *more* and *most*, and *less* and *least*; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Handy,	handier,	handiest.
Jolly,	jollier,	jolliest.
Lofty,	loftier,	loftiest.
Heavy,	heavier,	heaviest.
Handy,	more handy,	most handy.
Jolly,	more jolly,	most jolly.
Lofty,	more lofty,	most lofty.
Heavy,	more heavy,	most heavy.
Handy,	less handy,	least handy,
Jolly,	less jolly,	least jolly.
Lofty,	less lofty,	least lofty.
Heavy,	less heavy,	least heavy.
Able,	abler,	ablest.
Nimble,	nimbler,	nimblest.
Ample,	amplér,	amplest.
Simple,	simpler,	simplest.
Able,	more able,	most able.
Nimble,	more nimble,	most nimble.
Ample,	more ample,	most ample.
Simple,	more simple,	most simple.
Able,	less able,	least able.
Nimble,	less nimble,	least nimble.
Ample,	less ample,	least ample.
Simple,	less simple,	least simple.



## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Adjectives are compared irregularly.

1. When different words are used ; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Good,	better,	best.
Bad, evil, or ill,	worse,	worst.
Little,	less,	least.
Much or many,	more,	most.

2. When the comparing syllables or words are not applied to the positive according to the preceding rules or examples ; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Far,	farther,	farthest, farmost, farthermost.
Near,	nearer,	nearest, next.
Fore,	former,	foremost, first.
Hind,	hinder,	hindmost, hindermost.
In,	inner,	inmost, innermost.
Out,	{ outer,	outmost, outermost.
	{ utter,	utmost, uttermost.
Up,	upper,	upmost, uppermost.
Low,	lower,	lowest, lowermost.
Late,	later, latter,	latest, last.
—	after,	aftmost, aftermost.
—	further,	furthest, furthermost.
—	hither,	hithermost.
—	nether,	nethermost.
—	under,	undermost.
Front,	—	frontmost.
Rear,	—	rearmost.
Head,	—	headmost.
End,	—	endmost.
Top,	—	topmost.
Bottom,	—	bottommost.
Mid, middle,	—	midmost, middlemost.
North,	—	northmost.
South,	—	southmost.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
East,	——	eastmost.
West,	——	westmost.
Northern,	——	northernmost.
Southern,	——	southernmost.
Eastern,	——	easternmost.
Western,	——	westernmost.

*In*, *out*, and *up*, when adjective in power, constitute inseparable portions of words formed by them and other elements; as, *Inland*, *outside*, *uphill*.

ADJECTIVES TERMINATING IN *ISH*.

There are about one hundred adjectives terminating in *ish*. These adjectives express a diminutive amount of a quality. Those which are formed from adjectives, or from nouns which may be properly used as adjectives, may be contrasted with the primitives in the degree or the degrees in which they may be used; as,

Diminutive.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Sickish,	sick,	sicker,	sickest.
Meekish,	meek,	meeker,	meekest.
Sleekish,	sleek,	sleeker,	sleekest.
Whitish,	white,	whiter,	whitest.
Sweetish,	sweet,	sweeter,	sweetest.
Saltish,	salt,	salter,	saltest.

Nearly all of the adjectives in *ish* are formed from nouns not used as adjectives, and admit of comparison by *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*; as,

Noun.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Man,	mannish,	more mannish,	most mannish.
Boy,	boyish,	more boyish,	most boyish.
Girl,	girlish,	more girlish,	most girlish.
Prude,	prudish,	more prudish,	most prudish.
Clown,	clownish,	more clownish,	most clownish.
Freak,	freakish,	less freakish,	least freakish.
Knave,	knavish,	more knavish,	most knavish.

## INCOMPARABLE ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which cannot be increased or diminished in the intensity of their meaning, are incomparable. Such are adjectives of material, fixed form, definite time, endless duration, proper adjectives, and numeral adjectives.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Adjectives belong to nouns and pronouns.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

## Descriptive adjectives.

A hungry wolf.	A connubial tie.
A ravenous appetite.	A nuptial day.
A luxurious liver.	A hymeneal altar.
An abstemious student.	A conjugal relation.
An insatiable thirst.	An uxorious husband.
A voracious desire.	A matrimonial engagement.
The fond parent.	The ardent friend.
The tender mother.	The filial conduct.
The affectionate father.	The fraternal act.
The maternal regard.	The amicable agreement.
The parental care.	The friendly neighbor.
The fatherly love.	The mutual friend.
A local attachment.	A hostile army.
A travelling agent.	A militant nation.
A domestic life.	A spiteful serpent.
A permanent abode.	A petulant landlady.
An erratic tribe.	A vindictive temper.
An errant knight.	A pugnacious captain.
A ferocious beast.	A sly fox.
A clamorous mob.	A crafty jockey.
A ruthless tyrant.	A cunning lawyer.
A destructive animal.	An insidious foe.
A murderous robber.	A deceptive enemy.
A malicious critic.	A designing politician.

The thievish propensity.	The handy workman.
The covetous dealer.	The dexterous mechanic.
The avaricious landlord.	The ingenious machinist.
The selfish merchant.	The operative mason.
The stingy farmer.	The mechanical skill.
The sordid miser.	The constructive beaver.

## Proper adjectives.

An American colony.	The Wesleyan Institute.
A Russian ambassador.	The Newtonian theory.
A Turkish dress.	The Chinese language.
A Lutheran church.	The Boston schools.
A Baltimore clipper.	The Ohio river.

## Numeral adjectives.

## Cardinal.

One bushel	= 1 bushel.
Five ladies	= 5 ladies.
Fifty-nine days	= 59 days.
One hundred years	= 100 years.
Four thousand people	= 4000 people.

## Ordinal.

The first division	= the 1st division
The second year	= the 2d year.
The tenth instant	= the 10th inst.
The third chapter	= the III. chap.
The sixth verse	= the 6th verse.

## Multiplicative.

A single instance.	Single entry.
A double portion	= a twofold portion.
A triple cord	= a threefold cord.
A quadruple allowance	= a fourfold allowance.
A thirty-fold yield.	A sixty-fold increase.

OBS.—Of the cardinal numerals, *one* is singular, and the higher numerals are plural. The ordinal numerals are singular. The words of these two classes are associated with nouns of like number. The multiplicative numerals belong to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*A hungry wolf.*

*A* is the indefinite article, and belongs to *wolf*. Rule.—The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

*Hungry* is an adjective, and belongs to *wolf*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Wolf* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person.

*An American colony.*

*An* is the indefinite article, and belongs to *colony*. Rule.—The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

*American* is a proper adjective, and belongs to *colony*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Colony* is a collective noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person.

*One bushel = 1 bushel.*

*One* is a cardinal numeral adjective, singular number, and belongs to *bushel*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Bushel* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person.

*The first division = the 1st division.*

*First* is an ordinal numeral adjective, singular number, and belongs to *division*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*A single instance.*

*Single* is a multiplicative numeral adjective, and belongs to *instance*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

#### THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

Declension is a regular arrangement of nouns by cases and numbers; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> Pen,	pens,	<i>Nom.</i> Fox,	foxes,	<i>Nom.</i> Man,	men,
<i>Poss.</i> Pen's,	pens',	<i>Poss.</i> Fox's,	foxes',	<i>Poss.</i> Man's,	men's,
<i>Obj.</i> Pen,	pens,	<i>Obj.</i> Fox,	foxes,	<i>Obj.</i> Man,	men,
<i>Ind.</i> Pen,	pens.	<i>Ind.</i> Fox,	foxes.	<i>Ind.</i> Man,	men.

Nouns are the same in form in the nominative, objective, and independent cases. These accidents are distinguished by the grammarian by noticing the relations which the nouns bear to certain other parts of speech in the structures. These cases will, therefore, be explained as the structures are presented in their proper order.

## THE POSSESSIVE CASE.

The possessive case of regular nouns is formed from the nominative by adding an apostrophe ( ' ) and an *s* in the singular number, and by adding an apostrophe in the plural ; as,

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Poss.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Poss.</i>
Zebra,	zebra's,	zebras,	zebras'.
Justice,	justice's,	justices,	justices'.
Bee,	bee's,	bees,	bees'.
Boy,	boy's,	boys,	boys'.
Proxy,	proxy's,	proxies,	proxies'.
Hero,	hero's,	heroes,	heroes'.
Tyro,	tyro's,	tyros,	tyros'.
Cuckoo,	cuckoo's,	cuckoos,	cuckoos'.
Stag,	stag's,	stags,	stags'.
Critic,	critic's,	critics,	critics'.
Nurse,	nurse's,	nurses,	nurses'.
Witness,	witness's,	witnesses,	witnesses'.
Wolf,	wolf's,	wolves,	wolves'.

The possessive case of irregular nouns is formed by adding an apostrophe and an *s* in both the singular and the plural ; as,

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Poss.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Poss.</i>
Man,	man's,	men,	men's.
Woman,	woman's,	women,	women's.
Goose,	goose's,	geese.	————
Mouse,	mouse's,	mice.	————
Brother,	brother's,	brethren,	brethren's.

The exceptions to the rule for forming the possessive singular, are very few, and may be regarded poetic licenses which can be seldom allowed in prose.

A few nouns in *ce* and *ss* form the possessive by adding the apostrophe ; as,

Conscience' sake.

Goodness' sake.

Peace' sake.

Righteousness' sake.

Common and proper nouns which relate to persons, are frequently used in the possessive case; but this case is seldom applicable to nouns of any class which relate to inanimate objects.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

Nouns govern nouns and pronouns in the possessive case.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

##### Common and collective nouns.

Singular.	Plural.
A justice's court.	Justices' courts.
A bee's sting.	The bees' store.
A boy's hat.	The boys' hats.
A proxy's vote.	The proxies' votes.
A hero's magnanimity.	The heroes' magnanimity.
A tyro's lesson.	Tyros' lessons.
A cuckoo's nest.	Cuckoos' notes.
A stag's horns.	Four stags' horns.
A critic's skill.	Critics' spleen.
A nurse's charge.	Nurses' labors.
A witness's testimony	Witnesses' testimony.
Plaintiff's cause.	Plaintiffs' causes.
A man's dress.	Men's clothing.
A woman's rights.	Women's rights.
A brother's love.	Two brothers' children.
A brother's zeal.	The brethren's zeal.
An army's bravery.	_____
A mob's fury.	_____
A committee's report.	_____



## Proper nouns.

Joshua's courage.	Jehu's chariot.
Ahab's idolatry.	Law's Call.
Isaac's blessing.	Wesley's Sermons.
Edward's misfortunes.	Calvin's Institutes.
Jesse's son.	Jefferson's Notes.
General Twigg's brigade.	December's cold.
Elijah's ascension.	Saturday's mail.
Levi's priesthood.	Mississippi's flood.
Frederick's dominions.	Corporal Trim's pride.
Paul's defense.	Uncle Toby's sensibility.
Abraham's faith.	General Scott's achievements.
Solomon's wisdom.	President Jackson's vetoes.
Cato's severity.	Archbishop Hughes's lecture.
Philip's daughters.	Queen Victoria's dominions.
Peter's vision.	Doctor Chamomile's bitters.
Thomas's unbelief.	William Penn's honesty.
Margaret's firmness.	Henry Clay's speech.

## Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*A justice's court.*

*A* is the indefinite article, and belongs to *justice's*. Rule.—The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

*Justice's* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, and is governed by *court*. Rule.—Nouns govern nouns and pronouns in the possessive case.

*Court* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person.

*Joshua's courage.*

*Joshua's* is a proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, and is governed by *courage*. Rule.—Nouns govern nouns and pronouns in the possessive case

## THE PRONOUN.

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun. It also stands for another pronoun, or for a person or a thing without reference to a name.

Pronouns are used to prevent tiresome repetitions of nouns, and to give force and precision to language. They admit of the modifications of gender, number, and person, and bear the relations of case to other words in the structures of the language.

## CLASSIFICATION OF PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are divided into *personal*, *compound personal*, *adjective*, *possessive personal*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *interrogative adjective*, and *compound relative*.

## THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*, with their variations in declension.

## THE DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## The first person.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> I,	we,
<i>Poss.</i> My,	our,
<i>Obj.</i> Me,	us,
<i>Ind.</i> I,	we.

## The second person.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> Thou,	ye or you,
<i>Poss.</i> Thy,	your,
<i>Obj.</i> Thee,	you,
<i>Ind.</i> Thou,	you.

## The third person.

Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> He,	they,	<i>Nom.</i> She,	they,	<i>Nom.</i> It,	they,
<i>Poss.</i> His,	their,	<i>Poss.</i> her,	their,	<i>Poss.</i> its,	their,
<i>Obj.</i> Him,	them,	<i>Obj.</i> her,	them,	<i>Obj.</i> it,	them,
<i>Ind.</i> He,	they.	<i>Ind.</i> she,	they.	<i>Ind.</i> it,	they.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

## The possessive case.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
My hat.	Our house.	Thy home.	Your office.
My gun.	Our friends.	Thy cottage.	Your company.
My top.	Our cattle.	Thy dwelling.	Your society.
My ship.	Our carriage.	Thy residence.	Your book.
His duty.	Their riches.	Her beauty.	Its population.
His interest.	Their troubles.	Her conduct.	Its products.
His concern.	Their evils.	Her bearing.	Its commerce.
His litigation.	Their virtues.	Her talents.	Its magnitude.

## Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*My hat.*      *Thy home.*      *His duty.*

*My* is a personal pronoun, singular number, first person, possessive case, and is governed by *hat*. Rule.—Nouns govern the possessive case of nouns and pronouns.

*Hat* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person.

*Thy* is a personal pronoun, singular number, second person, possessive case, and is governed by *home*. Rule.—Nouns govern the possessive case of nouns and pronouns.

*His* is a personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, and is governed by *duty*. Rule.—Nouns govern the possessive case of nouns and pronouns.

## THE COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

A *compound personal pronoun* is used instead of a noun or a pronoun, the idea of which is emphatically expressed or repeated. It is formed by adding *self* or *selves* to a personal pronoun; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Myself,	ourselves;	Himself,	} themselves.
Thyself,	yourselves;	Herself,	
		Itself,	

## THE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

An *adjective pronoun* is a definitive word that partakes of the nature of an adjective and a pronoun. It belongs to the noun like an adjective, or is used as an index to, and as a substitute for, the noun.

The adjective pronouns are divided into *distributive*, *definite*, and *indefinite*.

## THE DISTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A *distributive adjective pronoun* implies each one of all the persons or things which make up a number. The words of this class are *each*, *every*, *either*, and *neither*.

## THE DEFINITE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A *definite adjective pronoun* points out the noun in a definite manner. The words of this class are *this*, *that*, with their plurals *these* and *those*; *former*, *latter*, *both*, *same*, *said*, *aforesaid*, *aforementioned*, *which*, and *what*.

*This* and *that* are used with nouns in the singular number; *these*, *those*, and *both*, with nouns in the plural. The rest of the words of this list are used with the singular and the plural.

## THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

An *indefinite adjective pronoun* points out the noun in an indefinite manner. The principal words of this class are *one*, *no* or *none*, *some*, *other*, *only*, *all*, *else*, *such*, *any*, *many*, *much*, *several*, *few*, *whole*, *little*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *whichever*, and *whichsoever*.

*One* and *other* are regularly declined like nouns; as,

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i>	One,	ones,	<i>Nom.</i>	Other,	others,
<i>Poss.</i>	One's,	ones',	<i>Poss.</i>	Other's,	others',
<i>Obj.</i>	One,	ones,	<i>Obj.</i>	Other,	others,
<i>Ind.</i>	One,	ones.	<i>Ind.</i>	Other,	others.

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Each visitor.	Every pupil.	Either way.
Each person.	Every example.	Either dilemma.
Each animal.	Every object.	Neither conclusion.
Each vessel.	Every argument.	Neither candidate.

## Singular.

This lion.  
That servant.  
The same tiger.  
My former letter.  
The latter year.

---

The same cause.  
Which tree.  
What reason.

One evening.  
Whichever road.  
Whichsoever way.  
Much good.  
All nature.  
No expression.  
An other matter.  
Some lesson.  
Such a notion.  
Such action.  
Any article.  
Many a mercy.  
A whole nation.  
Whatever cause.  
Any cause whatever.  
Whatsoever cause.  
Any cause whatsoever.

## Plural.

These lions.  
Those servants.  
The same tigers.  
My former letters.  
The latter years.  
Both nations.

The same causes.  
Which trees.  
What reasons.

Several hours.  
Few individuals.  
A few individuals.  
Much goods.  
All things.  
No expressions.  
Other matters.  
Some lessons.  
Such notions.  
Such actions.  
Any articles.  
Many mercies.  
Whole nations.  
Whatever causes.  
Any causes whatever.  
Whatsoever causes.  
Any causes whatsoever.

## Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Each visitor.*

*Each* is a distributive adjective pronoun, and belongs to *visitor*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*Visitor* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person.

*This lion.**These lions.**The same tiger.*

*This* is a definite adjective pronoun, singular number, and belongs to *lion*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*Lion* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person.

*These* is a definite adjective pronoun, plural number, and belongs to *lions*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *tiger*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Same* is an adjective pronoun, and belongs to *tiger*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*One evening.**Several hours.**Whichever road.*

*One* is an indefinite adjective pronoun, singular number, and belongs to *evening*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*Evening* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person.

*Several* is an indefinite adjective pronoun, plural number, and belongs to *hours*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*Whichever* is an indefinite adjective pronoun, and belongs to *road*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

---

NOTE.—The pronouns are not fully discussed at this point, inasmuch as pupils, at this stage of advancement, cannot fully comprehend their bearing towards other parts of speech. The pronoun will be resumed at page 276.

## THE VERB.

A **VERB** is a word which predicates action or being. Verbs are classified by their *form* and by their *use*.

## THE CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS BY THEIR USE.

Verbs are divided, in respect to their use, into *transitive*, *intransitive*, and *passive*.

## THE TRANSITIVE VERB.

The *transitive verb* predicates action which terminates on an object; as,

	Nom. case.	Trans. verb.	Obj. case.
Farmers raise grain.	= Farmers	raise	grain.
Millers grind corn.	= Millers	grind	corn.
Bakers bake bread.	= Bakers	bake	bread.
Tanners tan hides.	= Tanners	tan	hides.
Barbers cut hair.	= Barbers	cut	hair.
Merchants sell goods.	= Merchants	sell	goods.
Authors write books.	= Authors	write	books.
Mariners traverse oceans.	= Mariners	traverse	oceans.

## THE INTRANSITIVE VERB.

The *intransitive verb* predicates being, or an action which does not terminate on an object; as,

	Nom. case.	Int. verb.
He is.	= He	is.
The horses stand.	= The horses	stand.
The girls blush.	= The girls	blush.
The interests clash.	= The interests	clash.
The oxen walk.	= The oxen	walk.
The lamb skips.	= The lamb	skips.
The lady sleeps.	= The lady	sleeps.
Animals breathe.	= Animals	breathe.



## THE PASSIVE VERB.

The *passive verb* predicates action received by its nominative case; as,

	Nom. case.	Pass. verb.
Grain is raised.	= Grain	is raised.
Corn is ground.	= Corn	is ground.
Bread is baked.	= Bread	is baked.
Hides are tanned.	= Hides	are tanned.
Hair is cut.	= Hair	is cut.
Goods are sold.	= Goods	are sold.
Books are written.	= Books	are written.

## MODIFICATIONS OF VERBS.

Verbs are modified by *mode* and *tense*, *number* and *person*.

*Mode* is the manner of predicating action or being.

There are five modes; the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *potential*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

*Tense* is the time of predicating action or being.

There are six tenses; viz.,

One present,	The present.
Three past,	{ The indefinite perfect, The present perfect, The prior perfect.
Two future,	{ The indefinite future, The prior future.

## THE PARTICIPLE.

A *participle* is a word that partakes of the nature of a verb and an adjective.

Participles are derived from verbs. Each complete verb supplies three participles; viz., the *present*, the *perfect*, and the *prior perfect*.

## Intransitive verbs and their participles.

Verb.	Pres. part.	Perf. part.	Prior perf. part.
Go,	going,	gone,	having gone.
Skulk,	skulking,	skulked,	having skulked.
Exclaim,	exclaiming,	exclaimed,	having exclaimed.
Domineer,	domineering,	domineered,	having domineered.

## Transitive verbs and their participles.

Verb.	Pres. part.	Perf. part.	Prior perf. part.
Heed,	heeding,	heeded,	having heeded.
Love,	loving,	loved,	having loved.
Bake,	baking,	baked,	having baked.
Read,	reading,	read,	having read.

## Passive verbs and their participles.

Verb.	Pres. part.	Perf. part.	Prior perf. part.
Am heeded,	being heeded,	heeded,	having been heeded.
Am loved,	being loved,	loved,	having been loved.
Is baked,	being baked,	baked,	having been baked.
Is read,	being read,	read,	having been read.

## THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

The conjugation of a verb is a regular arrangement of its several parts in its modes, tenses, and participles.

The principal parts of a complete verb are the *present*, ~~the~~ *indefinite perfect*, and the *perfect participle*.

## THE CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS BY THEIR FORM.

Verbs are divided, in respect to their form, into *regular*, *irregular*, *redundant*, and *defective*.

## REGULAR VERBS.

A *regular verb* forms the indefinite perfect tense and the perfect participle by adding *d* or *ed* to the present tense.

*Ed* having its full sound.

*Ed* has its full sound after *d* and *t*; as,

Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. part.	
Fade,	faded,	faded.	
Dilate,	dilated,	dilated.	
Weed,	weeded,	weeded.	
Delight,	delighted,	delighted.	
Blockade,	provide,	hate,	incite,
promenade,	bode,	deliberate,	quote,
precede,	corrode,	compensate,	denote,
reside,	conclude,	complete,	compute.
Nod,	respond,	object,	acquaint,
heed,	confound,	inflict,	adapt,
proceed,	regard,	construct,	accept,
aid,	defraud,	waft,	adopt,
braid,	chat,	drift,	corrupt,
brood,	pet,	salt,	attempt,
flood,	pit,	melt,	impart,
shroud,	dot,	assault,	assort,
fold,	glut,	result,	contrast,
band,	combat,	transplant,	vest,
command,	regret,	lament,	protest,
mend,	commit,	imprint,	twist,
commend,	allot,	anoint,	resist,
mind,	transact,	account,	adjust.

*Ed* having the sound of *d*.

*Ed* has the sound of *d* after *b, g, l, m, n, r, v, z*, and the vowels and diphthongs which are sounded in pronouncing the words; as,

Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. part.
Bribe,	bribed,	bribed.
Rage,	raged,	raged.
Impale,	impaled,	impaled.
Fable,	fabled,	fabled.

Present.	Ind. per.	Perf. par.	
Inflame,	inflamed,	inflamed.	
Wane,	waned,	waned.	
Prepare,	prepared,	prepared.	
Praise,	praised,	praised.	
Behave,	behaved,	behaved.	
Graze,	grazed,	grazed.	
Free,	freed,	freed.	
Tie,	tied,	tied.	
Hoe,	hoed,	hoed.	
Stab,	stabbed,	stabbed.	
Brag,	bragged,	bragged.	
Call,	called,	called.	
Cram,	crammed,	crammed.	
Scan,	scanned,	scanned.	
Char,	charred,	charred.	
Echo,	echoed,	echoed.	
Paw,	pawed,	pawed.	
Inscribe,	bale,	incline,	amuse,
probe,	smile,	hone,	bruise,
disrobe,	compile,	dethrone,	behave,
presage,	tole,	tune,	contrive,
pledge,	console,	commune,	deceive,
dodge,	nibble,	dare,	deserve,
bulge,	meddle,	cohere,	preserve,
indulge,	shuffle,	hire,	absolve,
range,	mangle,	perspire,	behoove,
estrangle,	pickle,	gore,	reprove,
revenge,	bristle,	deplore,	amaze,
cringe,	puzzle,	cure,	sneeze,
infringe,	blame,	inure,	baptize,
plunge,	prime,	appraise,	civilize,
expunge,	consume,	appease,	doze,
urge,	convene,	surmise,	agree,
emerge,	line,	compose,	accrue.

scrub,	snarl,	plan,	cashier,
beg,	entail,	hasten,	cheer,
swig,	extol,	happen,	domineer,
shrug,	embroil,	season,	remember,
compel,	overwhelm,	shun,	discover,
drill,	seem,	constrain,	soar,
fulfil,	redeem,	coin,	sour,
roll,	brim,	subjoin,	veto,
enrol,	drum,	drown,	strew,
cull,	charm,	warn,	view,
annul,	confirm,	char,	avow,
steel,	deform,	prefer,	follow,
heal,	envenom,	clear,	burrow.

When the present tense ends in *y* preceded by a vowel, the indefinite perfect tense and the perfect participle are formed by adding *ed* ; as,

Present.		Ind. perf.		Perf. part.
Play,		played,		played.
Stray,	pray,	parley,		decoy,
delay,	betray,	journey,		cloy,
display,	assay,	obey,		employ,
dismay,	defray,	convey,		annoy.

When the present tense ends in *y* preceded by a consonant, the indefinite perfect tense and the perfect participle are formed by changing *y* to *i*, and adding *ed* ; as,

Present.		Ind. perf.		Perf. part.
Candy,		candied,		candied.
Try,	defy,	decry,		envy,
rally,	rely,	tarry,		certify,
hurry,	deny,	pity,		satisfy,
glory,	espy,	levy,		prophecy.

*Ed* having the sound of *t*.

*Ed* has the sound of *t* after the sounds of *c, f, k, p, x, ch, sh*, and the hissing sound of *s* ; as,

Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. part.
Brace,	braced,	braced.
Chafe,	chafed,	chafed.
Bake,	baked,	baked.
Shape,	shaped,	shaped.
Chase,	chased,	chased.
Quaff,	quaffed,	quaffed.
Pack,	packed,	packed.
Snap,	snapped,	snapped.
Mix,	mixed,	mixed.
Stitch,	stitched,	stitched.
Banish,	banished,	banished.

entice,	bake,	shape,	parse,
chafe,	joke,	wipe,	decrease.
skiff,	reek,	grobe,	transgress,
triumph,	cook,	peep,	dismiss,
check,	snap,	carp,	emboss,
pick,	slip,	help,	discuss,
skulk,	droop,	guess,	transfix.

## REMARKS AND SUGGESTIONS.

It is suggested that pupils learn to name the indefinite perfect tense and the perfect participle of the verbs in the preceding list, by repeating them according to the given formula at the head of each class. They will thus gain a distinct knowledge of the form of the regular verbs in those leading parts, and become thoroughly prepared to undertake the irregular verbs.

Lest the formula should not be fully understood, it is here given just as it should be repeated. Present, *fade*; indefinite perfect, *faded*; perfect participle, *faded*. Regular.—It forms the indefinite perfect tense and the perfect participle by adding *d* to the present tense.

The reason for calling the verb regular is not an essential part of the formula. It should, therefore, be dropped as soon as the pupils thoroughly understand the characteristics of the regular verb. The names of the tenses and the participle may also be dropped, as soon as the learner can carry the idea without the names. In rapid parsing, the parts are run over in the mind, and the result is stated by calling the verb regular or irregular, as the case may be.

The several lists of regular verbs need not be committed to memory.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

An *irregular verb* does not form the indefinite perfect tense and the perfect participle by adding *d* or *ed* to the present tense.

## LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

In the following tables of irregular and redundant verbs, the forms of the indefinite perfect tense and the perfect participle, printed in plain or Roman letter, are preferable in use to the corresponding forms in *Italic* character, although the latter are sanctioned by good authorities.

Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. par.
Arise,	arose,	arisen.
Be, }	was.	been.
Am, }		
Bear,	{ bore, bare,	{ borne, born.
Beat,	beat,	{ <i>beat</i> , beaten.
Begin,	began	begun.
Behold,	beheld,	beheld.
Beset,	beset,	beset.
Bid,	{ bid, <i>bade</i> ,	<i>bid</i> , bidden.
Bind,	bound,	bound.
Bite,	bit,	{ <i>bit</i> , bitten.
Bleed,	bled,	bled.

## REMARKS AND SUGGESTIONS.

It is quite a task to learn the forms peculiar to the irregular and redundant verbs, and it would not be well to impose on young learners any portion of them as a solitary task, until they have become familiar with the words by means of concert repetition.

Pupils should be well grounded in this part of grammar. Should they be lame here, they will be puzzled with the formation of the passive verb, the indefinite perfect tense, and the tenses formed, in part, of the perfect participle. The teacher cannot fail to perceive that the different classes of verbs are discussed in their proper order.



Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. part.
Break,	{ broke, } { brake, }	broken.
Breed,	bred,	bred.
Bring,	brought,	brought.
Buy,	bought,	bought.
Cast,	cast,	cast.
Chide,	chid,	{ chid, chidden.
Choose,	chose,	chosen.
Cleave,	{ cleft, clove,	cleft, cloven.
Cling,	clung,	clung.
Come,	came,	come.
Cost,	cost,	cost.
Cut,	cut,	cut.
Do,	did,	done.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.
Drink,	drank,	{ drank, drunk.
Drive,	drove,	driven.
Eat,	{ eat, ate,	eat, eaten.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.
Feed,	fed,	fed.
Feel,	felt,	felt.
Fight,	fought,	fought.
Find,	found,	found.
Flee,	fled,	fled.
Fling,	flung,	flung.
Fly,	flew,	flown.
Forbear,	forbore,	forborne.
Forsake,	forsook	forsaken.
Get,	got,	{ got, gotten.
Give,	gave,	given.
Go,	went,	gone.

Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. part.
Grow,	grew,	grown.
Have,	had,	had.
Hear,	heard,	heard.
Hide,	hid,	{ hid, hidden.
Hit,	hit,	hit.
Hold,	held,	{ held, holden.
Hurt,	hurt,	hurt.
Keep,	kept,	kept.
Know,	knew,	known.
Lead,	led,	led.
Leave,	left,	left.
Lend,	lent,	lent.
Let,	let,	let.
Lie,	lay,	lain.
Lose,	lost,	lost.
Make,	made	made.
Meet,	met,	met.
Outdo,	outdid,	outdone.
Put,	put,	put.
Read,	read	read.
Rend,	rent,	rent.
Rid,	rid,	rid.
Ride,	rode,	{ rode, ridden.
Ring,	{ rung, } { rang, }	rung.
Rise,	rose,	risen.
Run,	{ ran, } { run, }	run.
Say,	said,	said.
See,	saw,	seen.
Seek,	sought,	sought.
Sell,	sold,	sold.
Send,	sent,	sent.

Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. part.
Set,	set,	set.
Shed,	shed,	shed.
Shoe,	shod,	shod.
Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Shut,	shut,	shut.
Shred,	shred,	shred.
Shrink,	{ shrunk, } { <i>shrank</i> , }	shrunk.
Sing,	{ sung, } { <i>sang</i> , }	sung.
Sink,	{ sunk, } { <i>sank</i> , }	sunk.
Sit,	sat,	sat.
Slay,	slew,	slain.
Sling,	slung,	slung.
Slink,	{ slunk, } { <i>slank</i> , }	slunk.
Smite,	smote,	{ smit, smitten.
Speak,	{ spoke, } { <i>spake</i> , }	spoken.
Spend,	spent,	spent.
Spin,	spun,	spun.
Spit,	{ spit, { <i>spat</i> , }	spit, <i>spitten</i> .
Spread,	spread,	spread.
Spring,	{ sprung, } { <i>sprang</i> , }	sprung.
Stand,	stood,	stood.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.
Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stung.
Stink,	{ stunk, } { <i>stank</i> , }	stunk.
Stride,	{ strode, { strid,	stridden, strid.

Present.	Ind. perf.	Perf. part.
Strike,	struck,	{ struck, stricken.
Swear,	swore,	sworn.
Swim,	{ swum, } { swam, }	swum.
Swing,	{ swung, } { swang, }	swung.
Take,	took,	taken.
Teach,	taught,	taught.
Tear,	tore,	torn.
Tell,	told,	told.
Think,	thought,	thought
Thrust,	thrust,	thrust.
Tread,	trod,	{ trod, trodden,
Wear,	wore,	worn,
Win,	won,	won,
Write,	wrote,	written.

*Borne* usually signifies carried. *Born* signifies brought forth.

*Cleave*, to adhere, is regular ; although *clave* was formerly used in the indefinite perfect tense.

*Lie*, to utter a falsehood, is regular.

*Spit*, to stab, to put upon a spit, is regular.

#### REDUNDANT VERBS.

A *redundant verb* forms the indefinite perfect tense or the perfect participle, or both, in two ways, so as to be regular and irregular.

#### LIST OF REDUNDANT VERBS.

Present.	Indefinite perfect.		Perfect Participle.	
	Irregular.	Regular.	Irregular.	Regular.
Abide,	abode,	<i>abided</i> ,	abode,	<i>abided</i> .
Awake,	awoke,	awaked,	<i>awoke</i> ,	awaked.
Belay,	belaid,	belayed,	belaid,	belayed.
Bend,	bent,	<i>bended</i> .	bent,	<i>bended</i> .

Present.	Indefinite perfect.		Perfect Participle.	
	Irregular.	Regular.	Irregular.	Regular.
Bereave,	bereft,	bereaved,	bereft,	bereaved.
Beseech,	besought,	<i>beseeched</i> ,	besought,	<i>beseeched</i> .
Bet,	bet,	betted,	bet,	betted.
Betide,	<i>betid</i> ,	betided,	<i>betid</i> ,	betided.
Blend,	<i>blent</i> ,	blended,	<i>blent</i> ,	blended.
Bless,	<i>blest</i> ,	blessed,	<i>blest</i> ,	blessed.
Blow,	blew,	<i>blowed</i> ,	blown,	<i>blowed</i> .
Build,	built,	<i>builded</i> ,	built,	<i>builded</i> .
Burn,	burnt,	burned,	burnt,	burned.
Burst,	burst,	<i>burst</i> ed,	burst,	<i>burst</i> ed.
Catch,	caught,	<i>catch</i> ed,	caught,	<i>catch</i> ed.
Clothe,	clad,	clothed,	clad,	clothed.
Creep,	crept,	<i>creep</i> ed,	crept,	<i>creep</i> ed.
Crow,	crew,	crowed,		crowed.
Curse,	<i>curst</i> ,	cursed,	<i>curst</i> ,	cursed.
Dare,	durst,	dared,		dared.
Deal,	dealt,	<i>dealed</i> ,	delt,	<i>dealed</i> .
Dig,	dug,	<i>dig</i> ed,	dug,	<i>dig</i> ed.
Dive,	dove,	dived,	<i>diven</i> ,	dived.
Dream,	dreamt.	dreamed,	dreamt,	dreamed.
Dress,	<i>drest</i> ,	dressed,	<i>drest</i> ,	dressed.
Dwell,	dwelt,	<i>dwelled</i> ,	dwelt,	<i>dwelled</i> ,
Freeze,	froze,	<i>freezed</i> ,	frozen,	<i>freezed</i> .
Geld,	<i>gelt</i> ,	gelded,	<i>gelt</i> ,	gelded.
Gild,	gilt,	gilded,	gilt,	gilded.
Gird,	girt,	girded,	girt,	girded.
Grave,		graved,	graven,	graved.
Grind,	ground,	<i>grinded</i> ,	ground,	<i>grinded</i>
Hang,	hung,	hanged,	hung,	hanged.
Heave,	hove,	heaved,	<i>hoven</i> ,	heaved.
Hew,		hewed,	hewn,	hewed.
Kneel,	knelt,	kneeled,	knelt,	kneeled.
Knit,	knit,	knitted,	knit,	knitted.
Lade,		laded,	laden,	laded.
Lay,	laid,	<i>lay</i> ed,	laid,	<i>lay</i> ed.

Present.	Indefinite perfect.		Perfect Participle.	
	Irregular.	Regular.	Irregular.	Regular.
Lean,	<i>leant</i> ,	leaned,	<i>leant</i> ,	leaned.
Leap,	<i>leapt</i> ,	leaped,	<i>leapt</i> ,	leaped.
Learn,	<i>learnt</i> ,	learned,	<i>learnt</i> ,	learned.
Light,	<i>lit</i> ,	lighted,	<i>lit</i> ,	lighted.
Mean,	meant,	<i>meaned</i> ,	meant,	<i>meaned</i> .
Mow,		mowed,	mown,	mowed.
Mulct,	<i>mulct</i> ,	mulcted,	<i>mulct</i> ,	mulcted.
Pass,	<i>past</i> ,	passed,	<i>past</i> ,	passed.
Pay,	paid,	<i>payed</i> ,	paid,	<i>payed</i> .
Pen,	pent,	penned,	pent,	penned.
Plead,	pled,	pleaded,	pled,	pleaded.
Prove,		proved,	<i>proven</i> ,	proved.
Quit,	quit,	quitted,	quit,	quitted.
Rap,	rapt,	rapped,	rapt,	rapped.
Reave,	reft,	reaved,	reft,	reaved.
Rive,		rived,	riven,	rived.
Roast,	<i>roast</i> ,	roasted,	<i>roast</i> ,	roasted.
Saw,		sawed,	sawn,	sawed.
Seethe,	sod,	seethed,	sodden,	seethed.
Shake,	shook,	<i>shaked</i> ,	shaken,	<i>shaked</i> .
Shape,		shaped,	shapen,	shaped.
Shave,		shaved,	shaven,	shaved.
Shear,	<i>shore</i> ,	sheared,	shorn,	sheared.
Shine,	shone,	shined,	shone,	shined.
Show,		showed,	shown,	showed.
Sleep,	slept,	<i>sleeped</i> ,	slept,	<i>sleeped</i> .
Slide,	slid,	<i>slided</i> ,	{ slid, slidden, }	<i>slided</i> .
Slit,	slit,	slitted,	slit,	slitted.
Smell,	smelt,	smelled,	smelt,	smelled.
Sow,		sowed,	sown,	sowed.
Speed,	sped,	<i>speeded</i> ,	sped,	<i>speeded</i> .
Spell,	spelt,	spelled,	spelt,	spelled.
Spill,	spilt,	spilled,	spilt,	spilled.
Split,	split,	<i>splitted</i> ,	split,	<i>splitted</i> .

Present.	Indefinite perfect.		Perfect Participle.	
	Irregular.	Regular.	Irregular.	Regular.
Spoil,	spoilt,	spoiled,	spoilt,	spoiled.
Stave,	stove,	staved,	stove,	staved.
Stay,	staid,	<i>stayed</i> ,	staid,	<i>stayed</i> .
String,	strung,	<i>stringed</i> ,	strung,	<i>stringed</i> .
Strive,	stove,	strived,	striven,	strived.
Strow,		strowed,	strown,	strowed.
Sweat,	sweat,	sweated,	sweat,	sweated.
Sweep,	swept,	sweaped,	swept,	sweaped.
Swell,		swelled,	swollen,	swelled.
Thrive,	throve,	thrived,	thriven,	thrived.
Throw,	threw,	throwed,	thrown,	throwed.
Wake,	woke,	waked,	<i>woke</i> ,	waked.
Wax,		waxed,	<i>waxen</i> ,	waxed.
Weave,	wove,	<i>weaved</i> ,	woven,	<i>weaved</i> .
Wed,	wed,	wedded,	wed,	wedded.
Weep,	wept,	<i>weaped</i> ,	wept,	<i>weaped</i> .
Wet,	wet,	<i>wetted</i> ,	wet,	<i>wetted</i> .
Whet,	whet,	whetted,	whet,	whetted.
Wind,	wound,	<i>winded</i> ,	wound,	<i>winded</i> .
Wont,	wont,	wonted,	wont,	wonted.
Work,	<i>wrought</i> ,	worked,	<i>wrought</i> ,	worked.
Wring,	wrung,	<i>wringed</i> ,	wrung,	<i>wringed</i> .

*Pen*, to write, is always regular. In the sense of to confine, it is redundant.

*Strew*, sometimes used for *strow*, is generally regarded regular, although *strewn* is allowable as a perfect participle.

*Wont*, when transitive or passive, is regular.



## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

A *defective verb* is deficient in some of the principal parts common to other verbs. It forms no participle, and is used only in some particular modes and tenses.

## LIST OF THE DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Present.	Ind. perf.	Present.	Ind. perf.
May,	might.	Quoth,	quoth.
Can,	could.	Wis,	wist.
Must,	—	Wit,	wot.
Shall,	should.	Ought,	—
Will,	would.	Beware,	—

All the defective verbs, except *quoth*, *wis*, *wit*, *ought*, and *beware*, are used in conjugating other verbs. They are hence called

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

An *auxiliary verb* is used in conjugating other verbs.

## LIST OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Present.	Ind. perf.	Present.	Ind. perf.
May,	might.	Do,	did.
Can,	could.	Have,	had.
Must,	—	Be, }	through all the modes and tenses and parti- ciples.
Shall,	should.	Am, }	
Will,	would.		

*Will* is sometimes used as a principal verb, and as such it is regular and complete.

*Do* is an irregular verb, complete in all its parts. As an auxiliary, it is used in the present and indefinite perfect tenses of the indicative and subjunctive modes, and in the imperative.

*Have* is an irregular verb, complete in all its parts. As an auxiliary, it is used in the present perfect and prior perfect tenses of the indicative and potential modes. *Having* is

used with the perfect participle in forming the prior perfect participle.

*Be* or *am* is an irregular verb, complete in all the parts, both as a principal verb and as an auxiliary.

The meaning and application of the auxiliary verbs can be best learned by observing how they are used in structure.

#### NUMBER AND PERSON.

The number and person of the verb are accidents in which it agrees with its nominative case.

Verbs have two numbers ; the singular and the plural.

The singular number denotes that the verb predicates action or being of one object.

The plural number denotes that the verb predicates action or being of more than one object.

Verbs have three persons ; the *first* ; the *second* ; and the *third*.

The *first person* denotes that the verb predicates action or being of the first person.

The *second person* denotes that the verb predicates action or being of the second person.

The *third person* denotes that the verb predicates action or being of the third person.

In each number there are three persons, and in each person there are two numbers ; as,

##### Singular.

1st person, I love,  
2d person, Thou lovest,  
3d person, He loves ;

##### Plural.

1st person, We love,  
2d person, Ye or you love.  
3d person, They love.

The number and person of verbs are determined by certain endings called *personal inflections*, or by the nominative case with which the verb is associated.

The terminal inflections are, *st*, *est*, and *t*, to denote

the second person, and *s*, *es*, *th*, and *eth*, to denote the third person. They are used only in the singular number.

Personal inflections are applied,

1. To the radical parts of complete verbs, in the indicative mode; as,

Present tense.

Singular.

- |                        |                      |                        |
|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I love,             | 1. I go,             | 1. I sit,              |
| 2. Thou lovest,        | 2. Thou goest,       | 2. Thou sittest,       |
| 3. He loves or loveth. | 3. He goes or goeth. | 3. He sits or sitteth. |

Indefinite perfect tense.

Singular.

- |                  |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. I loved,      | 1. I went,       | 1. I sat,        |
| 2. Thou lovedst, | 2. Thou wentest, | 2. Thou sattest, |
| 3. He loved.     | 3. He went.      | 3. He sat.       |

2. To auxiliary verbs in the indicative and potential modes; as,

	{ dost,	as in	Thou dost love.
Do,	{ does,	"	He does love.
	{ doth,	"	He doth love.
Did,	didst,	"	Thou didst love.
	{ hast,	"	Thou hast loved.
Have,	{ has,	"	He has loved.
	{ hath,	"	He hath loved.
Had,	hadst,	"	Thou hadst loved.
Will,	wilt,	"	Thou wilt love.
Shall,	shalt,	"	Thou shalt love.
May,	mayst,	"	Thou mayst love.
Can,	canst,	"	Thou canst love.
Might,	mightst,	"	Thou mightst love.
Could,	couldst,	"	Thou couldst love.
Should,	shouldst,	"	Thou shouldst love.
Would,	wouldst,	"	Thou wouldst love.

*Est*, as a distinct syllable, is added in the Scriptures to *may*, *might*, *could*, *should*, and *would*.

The inflections *st*, *est*, *t*, *th*, and *eth*, are confined chiefly to the grave or solemn style, and to poetry.

#### RULES FOR APPLYING THE PERSONAL INFLECTIONS.

1. When the first person of the verb ends in *e*, or in a letter which does not readily coalesce with *st*, *st* is added to *e*, and *est* to other terminations. In such cases, *est* forms a syllable.

Poets and pathetic writers and speakers commonly prefer *st*, wherever it can be pronounced in one syllable with other letters.

2. When the first person of the verb ends in a letter which readily coalesces in sound with *s*, *s* is added without increasing the number of syllables.

3. When the first person of the verb ends in a letter which does not readily coalesce in sound with *s*, *es* is added as an additional syllable.

The rules in relation to forming the plural of nouns in *s* and *es*, beginning on the 18th page, are applicable to forming the singular number of the verb in *s* and *es*.

4. When the first person of the verb ends in *e*, *th* is added; but when it ends in any other letter, *eth* is added, except in *doth*, *hath*, and *saieth*. In all cases, *eth* forms a syllable.

When the first person of the verb ends in a letter which readily coalesces in sound with *st*, *st* is added without increasing the number of syllables. When *st* is added to *ed*, *ed* is not abridged in pronunciation.

In the verb *be* or *am*, different words are used in certain modes and tenses, to express number and person. These words are exhibited in the synopsis of the verb, beginning on the 76th page.

#### ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE FOREGOING RULES.

##### Present tense.

1st person.	2d person.	3d person.
I parade,	Thou paradest,	He parades or paradeth.
I impede,	Thou impedest,	He impedes or impedeth.
I indite,	Thou inditest,	He indites or inditeth.
I confute,	Thou confutest,	He confutes or confuteth.

## 1st person.

## 2d person.

## 3d person.

I plod,	Thou ploddest,	He plods or ploddeth.
I fold,	Thou foldest,	He folds or foldeth.
I sound,	Thou soundest,	He sounds or soundeth.
I exceed,	Thou exceedest,	He exceeds or exceedeth.
I discard,	Thou discardest,	He discards or discardeth.
I chat,	Thou chattest,	He chats or chatteth.
I greet,	Thou greetest,	He greets or greeteth.
I permit,	Thou permittest,	He permits or permitteth.
I assault,	Thou assaultest,	He assaults or assaulteth.
I assort,	Thou assortest,	He assorts or assorteth.
I inspect,	Thou inspectest,	He inspects or inspecteth.
I engage,	Thou engageth,	He engages or engageth.
I compile,	Thou compilest,	He compiles or compileth.
I presume,	Thou presumest,	He presumes or presumeth.
I postpone,	Thou postponest,	He postpones or postponeth.
I declare,	Thou declarest,	He declares or declareth.
I devise,	Thou devisest,	He devises or deviseth.
I believe,	Thou believest,	He believes or believeth.
I see,	Thou seest,	He sees or seeth.
I tie,	Thou tiest,	He ties or tieth.
I sue,	Thou suest,	He sues or sueth.
I owe,	Thou owest,	He owes or oweth.
I allow,	Thou allowest,	He allows or alloweth.
I allay,	Thou allayest,	He allays or allayeth.
I obey,	Thou obeyest,	He obeys or obeyeth.
I enjoy,	Thou enjoyest,	He enjoys or enjoyeth.
I parley,	Thou parleyest,	He parleys or parleyeth.
I study,	Thou studieth,	He studies or studieth.
I hurry,	Thou hurriest,	He hurries or hurrieth.
I envy,	Thou envieth,	He envies or envieth.
I satisfy,	Thou satisfieth,	He satisfies or satisfieth.
I veto,	Thou vetoest,	He vetoes or vetoeth.
I scrub,	Thou scrubbest,	He scrubs or scrubbeth.
I drag,	Thou draggest,	He drags or draggeth.
I call,	Thou callest,	He calls or calleth.

1st person.	2d person.	3d person.
I feel,	Thou feelest,	He feels or feeleth.
I deal,	Thou dealest,	He deals or dealeth.
I trim,	Thou trimmest,	He trims or trimmeth.
I seem,	Thou seemest,	He seems or seemeth.
I scan,	Thou scannest,	He scans or scanneth.
I glean,	Thou gleanest,	He gleanes or gleaneth.
I cheer,	Thou cheerest,	He cheers or cheereth.
I fear,	Thou fearest,	He fears or feareth.
I expel,	Thou expellest,	He expels or expelleth.
I reveal,	Thou revealest,	He reveals or revealeth.
I reform,	Thou reformest,	He reforms or reformeth.
I abstain,	Thou abstainest,	He abstains or abstaineth.
I enlighten,	Thou enlightenest,	He enlightens or enlighteneth.
I prefer,	Thou preferrest,	He prefers or preferreth.
I place,	Thou placest,	He places or placeth.
I enforce,	Thou enforcest,	He enforces or enforceth.
I take,	Thou takest,	He takes or taketh.
I ache,	Thou achest,	He aches or acheth.
I awake,	Thou awakest,	He awakes or awaketh.
I rebuke,	Thou rebukest,	He rebukes or rebuketh.
I hope,	Thou hopest,	He hopes or hopeth.
I erase,	Thou erasest,	He erases or eraseth.
I converse,	Thou conversest,	He converses or converseth.
I lack,	Thou lackest,	He lacks or lacketh.
I look,	Thou lookest,	He looks or looketh.
I seek,	Thou seekest,	He seeks or seeketh.
I flinch,	Thou flinchest,	He flinches or flincheth.
I catch,	Thou catchest,	He catches or catcheth.
I blush,	Thou blushest,	He blushes or blusheth.
I skip,	Thou skippest,	He skips or skippeth.
I equip,	Thou equippest,	He equips or equippest.
I sleep,	Thou sleepest,	He sleeps or sleepeth.
I hiss,	Thou hissest,	He hisses or hisseth.
I surpass,	Thou surpassest,	He surpasses or surpasseth.
I prefix,	Thou prefixest,	He prefixes or prefixeth.

## Indefinite perfect tense.

1st person.	2d person.	3d person.
I paraded,	Thou paradest,	He paraded.
I plodded,	Thou ploddedst,	He plodded.
I chatted,	Thou chattedst,	He chatted.
I engaged,	Thou engagedst,	He engaged.
I compiled,	Thou compiledst,	He compiled.
I presumed,	Thou presumedst,	He presumed.
I postponed,	Thou postponedst,	He postponed.
I declared,	Thou declaredst,	He declared.
I devised,	Thou devisedst,	He devised.
I believed,	Thou believedst,	He believed.
I tied,	Thou tiedst,	He tied.
I allayed,	Thou allayedst,	He allayed.
I obeyed,	Thou obeyedst,	He obeyed.
I studied,	Thou studiedst,	He studied.
I satisfied,	Thou satisfiedst,	He satisfied.
I vetoed,	Thou vetoedst,	He vetoed.
I dragged,	Thou draggedst,	He dragged.
I called,	Thou calledst,	He called.
I trimmed,	Thou trimmedst,	He trimmed.
I scanned,	Thou scannedst,	He scanned.
I expelled,	Thou expelledst,	He expelled.
I abstained,	Thou abstainedst,	He abstained.
I concurred,	Thou concurredst,	He concurred.
I placed,	Thou placedst,	He placed.
I ached,	Thou achedst,	He ached.
I rebuked,	Thou rebukedst,	He rebuked.
I hoped,	Thou hopedst,	He hoped.
I erased,	Thou erasedst,	He erased.
I lacked,	Thou lackedst,	He lacked.
I blushed,	Thou blushedst,	He blushed.
I skipped,	Thou skippedst,	He skipped.
I hissed,	Thou hissedst,	He hissed.
I prefixed,	Thou prefixedst,	He prefixed.



The Friends, in the familiar use of the second person singular, prefer *st* to *est* in the present tense, wherever it can be pronounced in one syllable with other letters ; but they dispense with all personal inflections in the indefinite perfect tense indicative, and in the auxiliaries, except *hast*. They thus avoid some quaintness and formality in conversation, and some difficulties of utterance. Their writings, however, afford but few examples of these peculiarities. The conversational style of the Friends is well sustained by the poets, although examples of such usage are often quoted as false in syntax.

In the common or familiar style, *you* and the plural form of the verb is used for *thou* and the singular form. This usage supersedes the personal inflections of the second person of the verbs generally, and the forms of the second person singular of *be* or *am*.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF THE TENSES.

The tenses are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A *simple tense* is a radical verb either with or without a personal or a tensic inflection.

A *compound tense* is a combination of a radical verb or a perfect participle with an auxiliary verb.

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB.

A synopsis of the verb is presented in the following six pages. A transitive verb is placed in the first column, the verb *be* or *am* in the second, and a passive verb in the third. These verbs should be inflected in the numbers and persons from the left to the right.

Transitive and intransitive verbs are conjugated in the same manner, except the verb *be* or *am* ; and this verb is unlike the rest in but few of its forms.

#### FORMATION OF THE PASSIVE VERB.

The passive verb is formed by adding the perfect participle of a transitive verb to the verb *be* or *am*.

## A GENERAL SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

The *indicative mode* denotes simple predication.

## Present tense.

The *present tense* denotes present time. *Do* is the auxiliary of this tense

THE TRANSITIVE VERB.		THE VERB <i>be</i> OR <i>am</i> .		THE PASSIVE VERB.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
1. I love,	1. We love,	1. I am,	1. We are,	1. I am loved,	1. We are loved,
2. Thou lovest,	2. You love,	2. Thou art,	2. You are,	2. Thou art loved,	2. You are loved,
3. He loves;	3. They love.	3. He is;	3. They are.	3. He is loved;	3. They are loved.

## Indefinite perfect tense.

The *indefinite perfect tense* denotes time as indefinitely past. *Did* is the auxiliary of this tense.

Singular.		Plural.	
1. I loved,	2. Thou lovedst,	1. I was,	2. Thou wast,
3. He loved;		3. He was;	3. They were.
Plural.		Singular.	
1. We loved,	2. You loved,	1. I was loved,	2. Thou wast loved,
3. They loved.		3. He was loved;	3. They were loved.

## Present perfect tense.

The *present perfect tense* { denotes time past extending to the present moment.  
is formed by prefixing *have* to the perfect participle.

Singular.		Plural.	
1. I have loved,	2. Thou hast loved,	1. I have been,	2. Thou hast been,
3. He has loved;		3. He has been;	3. They have been.
Plural.		Singular.	
1. We have loved,	2. You have loved,	1. I have been loved,	2. Thou hast been loved,
3. They have loved.		3. He has been loved;	3. They have been loved.

## Prior perfect tense.

The *prior perfect tense* { denotes time as past before some other point of time.  
is formed by prefixing *have* to the perfect participle.

Singular.			Plural.		
1. I had loved,	2. Thou hadst loved,	3. He had loved;	1. I had been,	2. Thou hadst been,	3. He had been;
			1. I had been loved,	2. Thou hadst been loved,	3. He had been loved;
			1. We had been loved,	2. You had been loved,	3. They had been loved.

## Indefinite future tense.

The *indefinite future tense* { denotes time as indefinitely future.  
is formed by prefixing *shall* or *will* to the present tense.

Singular.			Plural.		
1. I shall love,	2. Thou wilt love,	3. He will love;	1. I shall be,	2. You will be,	3. They will be.
			1. I shall be loved,	2. Thou wilt be loved,	3. He will be loved;
			1. We shall be loved,	2. You will be loved,	3. They will be loved.

## Prior future tense.

The *prior future tense* { denotes time as past before some future time.  
is formed by prefixing *shall have* or *will have* to the perfect participle.

Singular.			Plural.		
1. I shall have loved,	2. Thou wilt have loved,	3. He will have loved;	1. I shall have been,	2. Thou wilt have been,	3. They will have been;
			1. I shall have been loved,	2. Thou wilt have been loved,	3. They will have been loved;
			1. We shall have been loved,	2. You will have been loved,	3. They will have been loved.

## POTENTIAL MODE.

The *potential mode* denotes possibility, permission, necessity, ability, determination, or obligation.

## Present tense.

The *present tense potential* is formed by prefixing *may*, *can*, or *must* to the uninflected root of the verb.

Singular.			Plural.		
1. I may love,	2. Thou mayst love,	3. He may love;	1. I may be,	2. You may be,	3. They may be.
1. I might love,	2. Thou mightst love,	3. He might love;	1. I might be loved,	2. Thou mightst be loved,	3. He may be loved;
1. We may love,	2. You may love,	3. They may love.	1. We may be loved,	2. You may be loved,	3. They may be loved.

## Indefinite perfect tense.

The *indefinite perfect tense potential* { is an indefinite tense, as it denotes time past, present, and future.  
is formed by prefixing *might*, *could*, *should*, or *would* to the uninflected root of the verb.

Singular.			Plural.		
1. I might love,	2. Thou mightst love,	3. He might love.	1. I might be,	2. You might be,	3. They might be,
1. I might be loved,	2. Thou mightst be loved,	3. He might be loved;	1. I might be loved,	2. Thou mightst be loved,	3. He might be loved;
1. We might love,	2. You might love,	3. They might love.	1. We might be loved,	2. You might be loved,	3. They might be loved.

## Present perfect tense.

The *present perfect tense potential* { denotes a present possibility or necessity of an act or state now past.  
is formed by prefixing *may have*, *can have*, or *must have* to the perfect participle.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
1. I may have loved,	1. We may have loved,	1. I may have been loved,	1. We may have been loved,
2. Thou mayst have loved,	2. You may have loved,	2. Thou mayst have been loved,	2. You may have been loved,
3. He may have loved;	3. They may have loved;	3. He may have been loved;	3. They may have been loved.

### Prior perfect tense.

{ denotes a past ability, determination, or obligation of an act or a state then past.

The *prior perfect tense potential* { is formed by prefixing *might have, could have, should have, or would have* to the perfect participle.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
1. I might have loved,	1. We might have loved,	1. I might have been loved,	1. We might have been loved,
2. Thou mightst have loved,	2. You might have loved,	2. Thou mightst have been loved,	2. You might have been loved,
3. He might have loved;	3. They might have loved;	3. He might have been loved;	3. They might have been loved.

### IMPERATIVE MODE.

The *imperative mode* { denotes command, exhortation, entreaty, or permission.

{ is formed by the radical verb alone, or by prefixing *do* to the uninflected root.

### Present tense.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
1. Love, love thou, or,	1. Love, love you, or,	1. Be loved, be thou loved, or	1. Be loved, be you loved, or
2. do thou love;	2. do you love.	2. do thou be loved;	2. do you be loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

The *subjunctive mode* { denotes doubt or contingency, or some supposition contrary to fact.  
is generally preceded by *if, though, lest, unless, or except*.

## Present tense.

The *present tense subjunctive* denotes some condition on which a future action or event is predicated.

Singular.		Plural.	
	Singular.		Plural.
1. If I love,	1. If I be,	1. If I be loved,	1. If we be loved,
2. If thou love,	2. If thou be,	2. If thou wert loved,	2. If you be loved,
3. If he love;	3. If he be;	3. If he were loved;	3. If they be loved.

## Indefinite perfect tense.

The *indefinite perfect tense subjunctive* is an indefinite tense, as it denotes time past, present, or future.

Singular.		Plural.	
	Singular.		Plural.
1. If I loved,	1. If I were,	1. If I were loved,	1. If we were loved,
2. If thou loved,	2. If thou wert,	2. If thou wert loved,	2. If you were loved,
3. If he loved;	3. If he were;	3. If he were loved;	3. If they were loved.

## INFINITIVE MODE.

The *infinitive mode* denotes action or being without limitation by number or person. *To* is the sign of this mode.

## Present tense.

The *present tense infinitive* denotes time present at some other time expressed.

To love. To be loved.

The *present perfect tense infinitive* { denotes time as past before some other time expressed.  
 is formed by prefixing *to have* to the perfect participle.

To have loved.

To have been loved.

## THE PARTICIPLES.

The *present participle* is formed by adding *ing* to the radical verb. When the verb ends in *e* mute, *e* is dropped before *ing*.

Loving.

Being.

Being loved.

Perfect participle.

Loved.

Been.

Loved.

Prior perfect participle.

Having loved.

Having been.

Having been loved.

## REMARKS AND SUGGESTIONS.

Most persons find it difficult to acquire a knowledge of the verb. It is a maze in which they get bewildered, and, in a majority of cases, become so disgusted with the study, that they never acquire a tolerable knowledge of grammar. By aid of the preceding synopsis, the entire scheme of the verb may be seen at a glance, and pupils may be conducted through this difficult part of the subject with comparative ease. Much, however, will depend on the teacher's skill in conducting the exercises. In all cases of instruction in classes, the mind, tongue, and voice, should be broken into the lesson by concert repetition. A sufficient number of other verbs, both transitive and intransitive, should be run through the synopsis, to enable pupils to apply the forms of conjugation to verbs generally. Not more than one tense should be attempted in a single exercise.



## THE PROGRESSIVE VERB.

The progressive verb expresses continuance of action or being. It is formed by adding the present participle to the verb *be* or *am*.

Verbs which, in their simple form, imply continuance, do not admit of the progressive form. Thus we can say, I respect him.—I love him; but not, I *am respecting* him.—I *am loving* him. The progressive form is applicable only to that kind of action which can be renewed or remitted at pleasure; as, I *am studying* my lesson.

## Indicative mode.

## Present tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I am learning,	1. We are learning,
2. Thou art learning,	2. You are learning,
3. He is learning;	3. They are learning.

This form of the verb runs through all the modes and tenses, and through the participles, except the perfect, which is wanting. In conjugating the remaining portions of this form, the verb *be* or *am* in the synopsis is to be followed throughout.

## FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

There are two forms of conjugation; the *affirmative* and the *interrogative*.

## THE AFFIRMATIVE FORM.

The *affirmative* is the direct form of expression. In this form the nominative case is placed before the verb, except in the imperative mode, where, if expressed, it is placed after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the radical verb.

The affirmative conjugation of the verb has been exhibited in pages immediately preceding. This part of the subject will be closed with a few remarks on the auxiliaries *do* and *did*.

*Do* and *did* are used in the affirmative form in the indicative mode, to express thought emphatically, and in the same

tenses of the subjunctive, where no especial emphasis is admissible. In the imperative mode, *do* is always emphatic.

### Indicative mode.

#### Present tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I do love,	1. We do love,
2. Thou dost love,	2. You do love,
3. He does love ;	3. They do love.

#### Indefinite perfect tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I did love,	1. We did love,
2. Thou didst love,	2. You did love,
3. He did love ;	3. They did love.

### Subjunctive mode.

#### Present tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I do love,	1. If we do love,
2. If thou do love,	2. If you do love,
3. If he do love ;	3. If they do love.

#### Indefinite perfect tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I did love,	1. If we did love,
2. If thou did love,	2. If you did love,
3. If he did love ;	3. If they did love.

For *do* in the imperative mode, see the synopses.

### THE INTERROGATIVE FORM.

The *interrogative* is the indirect form. In this form the nominative case is placed after the radical verb in the simple tenses, and immediately after a single auxiliary in the compound tenses. When there are two auxiliaries, the nominative case is placed between them. The interrogative form is used only in the indicative and potential modes.

*Do* and *did* are more frequently used in the interrogative

than in the affirmative form ; but in the interrogative they are like other auxiliaries, emphatic or unemphatic, just as we please to make them.

The verb *be* or *am* and the passive verb are used in the interrogative form. These verbs should, therefore, be run parallel with *love*, in the following modes and tenses, just as they have been in the synopsis.

### Indicative mode.

#### Present tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Do I love ?	1. Do we love ?
2. Dost thou love ?	2. Do you love ?
3. Does he love ?	3. Do they love ?

#### Indefinite perfect tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Did I love ?	1. Did we love ?
2. Didst thou love ?	2. Did you love ?
3. Did he love ?	3. Did they love ?

#### Present perfect tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Have I loved ?	1. Have we loved ?
2. Hast thou loved ?	2. Have you loved ?
3. Has he loved ?	3. Have they loved ?

#### Prior perfect tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Had I loved ?	1. Had we loved ?
2. Hadst thou loved ?	2. Had you loved ?
3. Had he loved ?	3. Had they loved ?

#### Indefinite future tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Shall I love ?	1. Shall we love ?
2. Wilt thou love ?	2. Will you love ?
3. Will he love ?	3. Will they love ?

#### Prior future tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Shall I have loved ?	1. Shall we have loved ?
2. Wilt thou have loved ?	2. Will you have loved ?
3. Will he have loved ?	3. Will they have loved ?

## Potential mode.

## Present tense.

Singular.

1. Can I love ?
2. Canst thou love ?
3. Can he love ?

Plural.

1. Can we love ?
2. Can you love ?
3. Can they love ?

## Indefinite perfect tense.

Singular.

1. Could I love ?
2. Couldst thou love ?
3. Could he love ?

Plural.

1. Could we love ?
2. Could you love ?
3. Could they love ?

## Present perfect tense.

Singular.

1. Can I have loved ?
2. Canst thou have loved ?
3. Can he have loved ?

Plural.

1. Can we have loved ?
2. Can you have loved ?
3. Can they have loved ?

## Prior perfect tense.

Singular.

1. Could I have loved ?
2. Couldst thou have loved ?
2. Could he have loved ?

Plural.

1. Could we have loved ?
2. Could you have loved ?
3. Could they have loved ?

The affirmative and interrogative forms are conjugated negatively by means of the adverb *not* ; as,

## Indicative mode.

## Present tense.

Singular.

1. I love not,
2. Thou lovest not,
2. He loves not ;
1. I do not love,
2. Thou dost not love,
3. He does not love ;
1. I am not,
2. Thou art not,
3. He is not ;

Plural.

1. We love not,
2. You love not,
3. They love not.
1. We do not love,
2. You do not love,
3. They do not love
1. We are not,
2. You are not,
3. They are not.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I am not loved,	1. We are not loved,
2. Thou art not loved,	2. You are not loved,
3. He is not loved ;	3. They are not loved.
1. I am not learning,	1. We are not learning,
2. Thou art not learning,	2. You are not learning,
3. He is not learning ;	3. They are not learning.
1. Love I not ?	1. Love we not ?
2. Lovest thou not ?	2. Love you not ?
3. Loves he not ?	3. Love they not ?
1. Do I not love ?	1. Do we not love ?
2. Dost thou not love ?	2. Do you not love ?
3. Does he not love ?	2. Do they not love ?
1. Am I not ?	1. Are we not ?
2. Art thou not ?	2. Are you not ?
3. Is he not ?	3. Are they not ?
1. Am I not loved ?	1. Are we not loved ?
2. Art thou not loved ?	2. Are you not loved ?
3. Is he not loved ?	3. Are they not loved ?
1. Am I not learning ?	1. Are we not learning ?
2. Art thou not learning ?	2. Are you not learning ?
3. Is he not learning ?	3. Are they not learning ?

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

Adjectives belong to nouns and pronouns.

Nouns govern the possessive case of nouns and pronouns.

Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as to them, when both words refer to the same thing.

#### THE NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE INTRANSITIVE VERB.

##### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

##### Indicative mode.

##### Present tense.

I err.	We fail.
Thou comest.	You grow.
The seal dives.	The birds flit.
I do live.	We do swim.
Thou dost rove.	You do wade.
He does roam.	The boys do work.
Do I live ?	Do we swim ?
Dost thou rove ?	Do you wade ?
Does she roam ?	Do the boys work ?

##### Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*I err.*      *Thou comest.*      *The seal dives.*

*I* is a personal pronoun, singular number, first person, and nominative case to *err*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Err* is a regular, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, first person, and agrees with *I*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

## Indefinite perfect tense.

I faded.	We scolded.
Thou wadedst.	You bounded.
The grocer traded.	The horns sounded.
I did abscond.	We did desist.
Thou didst flinch.	You did disagree.
Our friend did arrive.	They did embark.
Did I abscond?	Did we desist?
Didst thou flinch?	Did you disagree?
Did our friend arrive?	Did they embark?

## Present perfect tense.

I have prated.	We have rested.
Thou hast jested.	You have fretted.
The dog has panting.	The snows have melted.

*Thou* is a personal pronoun, singular number, second person, and nominative case to *comest*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Comest* is an irregular, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, second person, and agrees with *thou*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *seal*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Seal* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *dives*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Dives* is a redundant, transitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *seal*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

With change in mode, tense, number, and person, to suit particular cases, the preceding forms of analysis cover the examples of the form of structure here given, except the adverb *not*, which, for the present, may be regarded simply as the means of conjugating the verb negatively.



Have I prated ?	Have we rested ?
Hast thou jested ?	Have you fretted ?
Has the dog panted ?	Have the snows melted ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I had sinned.	We had called.
Thou hadst sobbed.	You had cringed.
Thy heart had throbbed.	The winds had lulled.
Had I sinned ?	Had we called ?
Hadst thou sobbed ?	Had you cringed ?
Had thy heart throbbed ?	Had the winds lulled ?

## Indefinite future.

I shall droop.	We shall crawl.
Thou wilt stoop.	You will drawl.
The owl will hoot.	The bees will swarm.
Shall I droop ?	Shall we crawl ?
Wilt thou stoop ?	Will you drawl ?
Will the owl hoot ?	Will the bees swarm ?

## Potential mode.

## Present tense.

I may commune.	We can exist.
Thou canst depart.	You must persevere.
The mule can pace.	The boys may play.
May I commune ?	Can we exist ?
Canst thou depart ?	Must you persevere ?
Can the mule pace ?	May the boys play ?

## Indefinite perfect tense.

I might perish.	We should proceed.
Thou couldst persist.	Ye could rejoice.
The dog would snarl.	The people would assemble.
Might I perish ?	Should we proceed ?
Couldst thou persist ?	Could ye rejoice ?
Would the dog snarl ?	Would the people assemble ?

## Present perfect tense.

I may have retired.	We may have wandered.
Thou must have wondered.	Ye may have responded.
The event may have happened.	Your ears must have tingled.
Can I have retired ?	Can we have wandered ?
Canst thou have wondered ?	Can ye have responded ?
Can the event have happened ?	May your ears have tingled ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I might have exulted.	We should have replied.
Thou couldst have presided.	You could have subsisted.
She would have lingered.	Stocks would have improved.
Might I have exulted ?	Should we have replied ?
Couldst thou have presided ?	Could you have subsisted ?
Would she have lingered ?	Would stocks have improved ?

## The imperative mode.

## Present tense.

Deliberate.	Vote.
Recline thou.	Smile ye.
Do aspire.	Do blush.

## PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

We agree.	The steam rises.
Peter wept.	Has the water boiled ?
Do alight.	The wound has festered.
The eagle can soar.	Some snow has fallen.
The enemy will decamp.	Has not the storm abated ?
Did not the wind whistle ?	Her beauty might fade.
Milk will coagulate.	Shall we digress ?
Will blood coagulate ?	May not the boat have gone ?
The horses can trot.	The corn grows.
The horses can not trot.	The corn does not grow.
Can the horses trot ?	Does the corn grow ?
Can not the horses trot ?	Does not the corn grow ?

## THE PROGRESSIVE VERB.

## Indicative mode.

## Present tense.

I am sitting.	We are wandering.
Thou art failing.	You are coughing.
The water is rising.	The ladies are walking.

## Indefinite perfect tense.

I was hopping.	We were hesitating.
Thou wast jumping.	You were growing.
He was skipping.	The monsters were floundering.

## Present perfect tense.

I have been fishing.	We have been speaking.
Thou hast been chatting.	You have been laughing.
The bird has been chirping.	The colts have been capering.

## Prior perfect tense.

I had been feasting.	We had been sleeping.
Thou hadst been talking.	You had been dreaming.
The wind had been blowing.	The dogs had been barking.

## Indefinite future tense.

I shall be traveling.	We shall be playing.
Thou wilt be rambling.	You will be strolling.
Interest will be accruing.	They will be listening.

## Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*I am sitting.*

*I* is a personal pronoun, singular number, first person, and nominative case to *am sitting*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Am sitting* is a progressive, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, first person, and agrees with *I*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

## Potential mode.

I may be boasting.	He might be improving.
The day must be dawning.	The horse might be feeding.
It may have been snowing.	He could have been teaching.
She must have been weeping.	It might have been raining.

## Imperative mode.

Present tense.

Be stirring.	Be moving.
--------------	------------

THE NOMINATIVE CASE, THE TRANSITIVE VERB, AND  
THE OBJECTIVE CASE.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

## Indicative mode.

Present tense.

I admire an observing pupil.  
 Thou beholdest the identical person.  
 He hears a distinguished preacher.  
 We employ an eminent lawyer.  
 You nominate the prominent politician.  
 They hang the notorious pirate.  
  
 I do love faithful friends.  
 Thou dost not avoid evil company.  
 He does not lead a pious life.  
 We do not discard our poor relatives.  
 You do not praise a worthless production.  
 Intelligent people do not read worthless books.

## Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*I admire an observing pupil.*

*I* is a personal pronoun, singular number, first person, and nominative case to *admire*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Admire* is a regular, transitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, first person, and agrees with *I*.

Do I cross a rapid stream ?  
 Dost thou visit thy country friends ?  
 Does he construct the long bridge ?  
 Do we pass the governor's residence ?  
 Do you make the plank road ?  
 Do the people not elect their rulers ?

Indefinite perfect tense.

I killed a diminutive serpent.  
 Thou viewedst a huge monster.  
 The travelers crossed a prodigious river.  
 We saw an enormous elephant.  
 You purchased a large schooner.  
 The peddlers carried bulky packs.  
 I did not make a long speech.  
 Thou didst not express thy opinion.  
 The lad did not learn his lesson.  
 We did not maintain our equilibrium.  
 Ye did not embrace the truth.  
 The citizens did not ratify the nomination.  
 Did I refuse good counsel ?  
 Didst thou wield a heavy sledge ?  
 Did not the law require an equal balance ?  
 Did we not carry a ponderous load ?  
 Did you balance our accounts ?  
 Did they maintain their equilibrium ?

---

Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

*An* is the indefinite article, and belongs to *pupil*. Rule.—The article *a* or *an* belongs to nouns in the singular number.

*Observing* is an adjective, and belongs to *pupil*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Pupil* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *admire*.

Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

## Present perfect tense.

I have chosen violet hue.  
Thou hast preferred indigo color.  
Jane has purchased a blue ribbon.  
We have mown the green grass.  
You have bought some yellow peaches.  
The ladies have procured orange dresses.  
The trustees have sold the red school-house.

Have I hit the mark ?  
Hast thou solved that problem ?  
Has the youth spoken the truth ?  
Have we not thwarted his purpose ?  
Have you repaired the dangerous road ?  
Have all the states armed the militia ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I had taken the wrong road.  
Thou hadst missed the right way.  
My guide had known the narrow passes.  
We had not visited distant lands.  
You had crossed the vast ocean.  
Our children had learned geography.  
  
Had I not rigged my ship ?  
Hadst thou not taken breakfast ?  
Had the plaintiff proved the facts ?  
Had we not let the premises ?  
Had you recited your lessons ?  
Had the guards taken their positions ?

## Indefinite future tense.

I shall study an accurate arithmetic.  
Thou wilt solve the difficult questions.  
My son shall make the long calculations.  
We will compute the interest.  
You shall meet the whole payment.  
The merchants will make heavy bills.

Shall I quote Milton ?  
Wilt thou parse that obscure sentence ?  
Will he not quaff the wine ?  
Shall we hoard our wealth ?  
Will you not sell your live stock ?  
Will not the people repudiate the nomination ?

Potential mode.

Present tense.

I may have some system.  
Thou canst preserve strict order.  
The landlord must keep an orderly house.  
We may arrange our affairs.  
You can make systematic arrangements.  
The unruly children may annoy the poor animal.

May I advance a few arguments ?  
Canst thou understand critical remarks ?  
Can the editor admit severe criticisms ?  
Can we believe such absurd allegories ?  
Can you not trust faithful friends ?  
May not the facts produce conviction ?

Indefinite perfect tense.

I might remember historical facts.  
Thou couldst improve thy memory.  
Every person should read sacred history.  
We could relate some curious incidents.  
You might forgive grievous injuries.  
Creditors should remember prompt payments.

Should I not gain some applause ?  
Shouldst thou not attend public worship ?  
Might he not procure a substitute ?  
Should we not prefer other claims ?  
Could you not secure an eligible position ?  
Should not rich men promote industry ?



## Present perfect tense.

I may have known the time.  
Thou canst have kept the step.  
He must have recollected the transaction.  
We may have recorded the date.  
You can not have counted the pulsations.  
The young man must have studied medicine.

Can I have transgressed the rules ?  
Mayst thou not have given offense ?  
Can this man have supplanted his friend ?  
May we not have done some harm ?  
Can you not have made some mistake ?  
May not the dogs have caught the fox ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I might have heard the music.  
Thou wouldst have perceived the slightest discord.  
Thy ear could not have caught the soft notes.  
We should have observed the pleasing harmony.  
You should have improved your excellent voices.  
Musicians should have honored Guido Aretine.

Might I not have broached the subject ?  
Couldst not thou have worked thy passage ?  
Would not the teacher have regarded thy complaints ?  
Might we not have enjoyed a visit ?  
Could you have seen the parade ?  
Would not the politicians have controlled the election ?

## Imperative mode.

## Present tense.

Observe verbal accuracy.  
Avoid a verbose style.  
Consult the best authorities.  
Improve your diction.  
Acquire an appropriate phraseology.  
Imitate the most accurate writers.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

The horse champed his bits.  
 The mother chided her son.  
 The ball grazed my head.  
 A dart has pierced the soldier's hand.  
 A frost may kill the vines.  
 Will not the youth speak the truth?  
 Can you solve other men's doubts?  
 May we not slake our thirst?  
 The sun has scorched my shoulder.  
 Do not the ladies sip tea?  
 The foreman may have docked his wages.  
 The bird would flap its wings.  
 Would not rain improve vegetation?

THE PROGRESSIVE VERB.

Indicative mode.

Present tense.

The farmer is driving his tardy cattle.  
 The pharmacist is preparing medicines.  
 The sculptor is carving a beautiful figure.

Indefinite perfect tense.

The type-founders were casting large types.  
 The architect was planning an elegant building.  
 Some carpenters were erecting a spacious barn.

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*The farmer is driving his tardy cattle.*

*Is driving* is a progressive, transitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *farmer*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

*Cattle* is a collective noun, masculine and feminine gender, plural number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *is driving*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

Present perfect tense.

Those hatters have been manufacturing hat bodies.

Those fishermen have been catching salmon.

The glaziers have been glazing our windows.

Prior perfect tense.

The surgeon had been amputating a mangled limb.

The teacher had been chastising refractory pupils.

The physician had been visiting his patients.

Potential mode.

The gardener must be grafting his trees.

The artist might be sketching a scene.

The hounds may have been trailing a fox.

You should have been reading some good book.

The progressive verb is seldom used in the imperative mode.

#### THE NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE PASSIVE VERB.

##### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Indicative mode.

Present tense.

I am absolved.

We are not admitted.

Thou art accosted.

You are advanced.

He is not accused.

They are abhorred.

Am I absolved?

Are we admitted?

Art thou accosted?

Are you not advanced?

Is he not accused?

Are they not abhorred?

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*I am absolved.*

*I* is a personal pronoun, singular number, first person, and nominative case to *am absolved*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Am absolved* is a regular, passive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, first person, and agrees with *I*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

## Indefinite perfect tense.

I was adopted.	We were amazed.
Thou wast advanced.	You were not amused.
The book was abridged.	Dangers were averted.
Was I not adopted ?	Were we not amazed ?
Wast thou not advanced ?	Were you not amused ?
Was the book abridged ?	Were the dangers averted ?

## Present perfect tense.

I have not been answered.	We have been applauded.
Thou hast been approved.	You have not been hissed.
It has been asserted.	Friends have been entertained.
Have I been answered ?	Have we not been applauded ?
Hast thou been approved ?	Have you been hissed ?
Has it not been asserted ?	Have friends been entertained ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I had been assailed.	We had been attended.
Thou hadst been assisted.	You had been attracted.
He had not been aroused.	They had not been reformed.
Had I not been assailed ?	Had we not been attended ?
Hadst thou been assisted ?	Had you been attracted ?
Had he been aroused ?	Had they not been reformed ?

## Indefinite future tense.

I shall be regarded.	We shall not be undone.
Thou wilt not be abandoned.	You shall be sustained.
He shall be apprehended.	They will be astonished.
Shall I not be regarded ?	Shall we be undone ?
Wilt thou not be abandoned ?	Will you be sustained ?
Will he be apprehended ?	Will they not be astonished ?

## Potential mode.

## Present tense.

I may not be appointed.	We can be assured.
Thou mayst be baffled.	You can not be cajoled.
It must not be allowed.	The apples must be assorted.

Can I be appointed ?	Can we be assured ?
Canst thou not be baffled ?	Can not you be cajoled ?
Must it not be allowed ?	Must the apples be assorted ?

Indefinite perfect tense.

I might be coerced.	We could not be defended.
Thou shouldst be convinced.	You should be confounded.
A book might be compiled.	Our foes could be conquered.
Could I be coerced ?	Could we not be defended ?
Couldst thou be convinced ?	Should you not be confounded ?
Might not a book be compiled ?	Could our foes be conquered ?

Present perfect tense.

I may not have been constrained.  
 Thou must have been defamed.  
 That fine horse may have been coveted.  
 We may have been commanded.  
 You may not have been wooed.  
 The children must have been vexed.  
 May I not have been constrained ?  
 Canst thou not have been defamed ?  
 May not that fine horse have been coveted ?  
 May we not have been commanded ?  
 Can you not have been wooed ?  
 Must not the children have been vexed ?

Prior perfect tense.

I might have been dazzled.  
 Thou wouldst not have been deceived.  
 The criminal might have been pardoned.  
 We should not have been taken.  
 You might not have been sought.  
 The eggs should have been poached.  
 Should I have been dazzled ?  
 Wouldst thou not have been deceived ?  
 Might not the criminal have been pardoned ?  
 Should we not have been taken ?  
 Might you not have been sought ?  
 Should not the eggs have been poached ?

Imperative mode.

Present tense.

Be persuaded.	Be dissuaded.
Be thou assured.	Be ye warned.
Do not be excited.	Do not be alarmed.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

I am known.	The truth is not admitted.
The sloop is loaded.	The land was not redeemed.
The goods are packed.	The note has not been paid.
The metal has been tested.	The seeds have been planted.
The law was not abolished.	A church might be built.
Could not a club be formed?	May not the oxen be yoked?
Can not the rising generation be educated?	
Has the grand jury been impaneled?	
Have not all the flowers been plucked?	
The scenes should have been shifted.	
May not the letter have been intercepted?	
Might not the garden have been spaded?	
Should not his faith have been plighted?	
Was not the manuscript interlined?	

THE NOMINATIVE CASE, THE VERB *be* OR *am*, AND  
THE ADJECTIVE.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Indicative mode.

Present tense.

I am cautious.	We are shy.
Thou art anxious.	You are wary.
That soldier is brave.	The ladies are circumspect.

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*That soldier is brave.*

*Soldier* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *is*. Rule. -The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

Am I not cautious ?	Are we shy ?
Art thou anxious ?	Are you not wary ?
Is that soldier brave ?	Are the ladies circumspect ?

## Indefinite perfect tense.

I was not gay.	We were emulous.
Thou wast vain.	You were ambitious.
He was fashionable.	His deeds were glorious.
Was I gay ?	Were we emulous ?
Wast thou not vain ?	Were you not ambitious ?
Was he fashionable ?	Were not his deeds glorious ?

## Present perfect tense.

I have been indignant.	We have been absolute.
Thou hast been austere.	You have been supercilious.
He has not been haughty.	They have been proud.
Have I not been indignant ?	Have we not been absolute
Hast thou been austere ?	Have ye been supercilious ?
Has he not been haughty ?	Have they not been proud ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I had been humane.	We had been generous.
Thou hadst been kind.	You had been merciful.
He had been benevolent.	They had been charitable.
Had I not been humane ?	Had we not been generous ?
Hadst thou been kind ?	Had you been merciful ?
Had he been benevolent ?	Had they been charitable ?

*Is* is an irregular, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *soldier*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

*Brave* is an adjective, and belongs to *soldier*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

When the adjective belongs to a pronoun, give the rule.—Adjectives belong to pronouns.



Indefinite future tense.

I shall be obedient.	We shall be modest.
Thou wilt be devout.	You will not be respectful.
He will not be venerable.	They will be respectable.
Shall I be obedient ?	Shall we not be modest ?
Wilt thou not be devout ?	Will you be respectful ?
Will he be venerable ?	Will they be respectable ?

Potential mode.

Present tense.

I must be firm.	We may be contumacious.
Thou canst be stubborn.	You must be indefatigable.
He can be pertinacious.	They may not be disobedient.
Must I be firm ?	Can we be contumacious ?
Mayst not thou be stubborn ?	Must you not be indefatigable ?
May he not be pertinacious ?	Can they not be disobedient ?

Indefinite perfect tense.

I might be conscientious.	We would not be partial.
Thou mightst be honest.	You should be sincere.
He might be righteous.	They should be candid.
Might I not be conscientious ?	Could we be partial ?
Couldst thou not be honest ?	Should you not be sincere ?
Would he be righteous ?	Would they be candid ?

Present perfect tense.

I may not have been desperate.
Thou must have been hopeless.
The inventor can not have been despondent.
We may have been buoyant.
You must have been cheerful.
The speculators must have been sanguine.
Must not I have been desperate ?
Mayst not thou have been hopeless ?
Can not the inventor have been despondent ?
May not we have been buoyant ?
Must you not have been cheerful ?
Must not the speculators have been sanguine ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I might have been credulous.  
 Thou mightst have been orthodox.  
 The display might have been wonderful.  
 We could have been mysterious.  
 You would not have been superstitious.  
 The tales might have been marvelous.  
  
 Should I have been credulous?  
 Couldst not thou have been orthodox?  
 Might not the display have been wonderful?  
 Could we not have been mysterious?  
 Would you have been superstitious?  
 Might not the tales have been marvelous?

## Imperative mode.

## Present tense.

Be loyal.	Be ready.
Be modest.	Be ye strong.
Do be manly.	Do be faithful.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

Be firm.	Do be consistent.
I am adroit.	Is not the soil barren?
Are not his opinions absurd?	Had his treatment been civil?
The child will be afraid.	Will the passengers be safe?
The fund will not be sufficient.	Can the fruit be ripe?
The morning fogs were dense.	
The spring trade will be brisk.	
The view must have been grand.	
Your positions must have been untenable.	
Is not frugality commendable?	

A few other verbs are occasionally used in this structure ; as,

I become sleepy.	We must become pious.
Thou hast become playful.	You might become popular.
He will become learned.	They may have become poor.

Glass feels smooth.	The syrup has boiled thick.
The apple tastes sour.	The moon shines bright.
The eggs will boil hard.	My uncle died rich.
The ride seems long.	The post stands strong.
The stream runs clear.	The animal looks gaunt.
The ox will grow fat.	The wheels might run easy.
You must walk straight.	The slave may go free.
The plaster will dry hard.	He remains steadfast.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE, THE VERB *be* OR *am*, AND THE  
NOMINATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Indicative mode.

Present tense.

I am he.	We are they.
Thou art she.	You are the boys.
He is the man.	Those are the horses.
Am I he ?	Are we not they ?
Art thou not she ?	Are not you the boys ?
Is he the man ?	Are these the horses ?

Indefinite perfect tense.

I was not the person.	We were planters.
Thou wast the dupe.	Ye were transgressors.
She was the seamstress.	They were not students.
Was I the person ?	Were not we planters ?
Wast thou the dupe ?	Were not we transgressors ?
Was she the seamstress ?	Were they students ?

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*I am he.*

*He* is a personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *am*. Rule.—Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as to them, when both words refer to the same thing.

## Present perfect tense.

I have been a wanderer.	We have been teachers.
Thou hast been a heretic.	You have been preachers.
He has not been a butcher.	They have been farmers.
Have I not been a wanderer ?	Have not we been teachers ?
Hast thou been a heretic ?	Have you been preachers ?
Has not he been a butcher ?	Have they been farmers ?

## Prior perfect tense.

I had been a gardener.	We had not been hatters.
Thou hadst been a miller.	You had been rope-makers.
He had been a baker.	They had been tailors.
Had I not been a gardener ?	Had not we been hatters ?
Hadst thou been a miller ?	Had you been rope-makers ?
Had not he been a baker ?	Had they been tailors ?

## Indefinite future tense.

I shall be a tobacconist.	We shall be milliners.
Thou wilt be a brewer.	You will not be barbers.
He will be a dyer.	They will be tanners.
Shall I be a tobacconist ?	Shall we be milliners ?
Wilt thou be a brewer ?	Will not you be barbers ?
Will not he be a dyer ?	Will they be tanners ?

## Potential mode.

The young man may be a comb-maker.  
 Those strangers must be hunters.  
 The lad would not be a fisherman.  
 He should not be a noisy auctioneer.  
 They may have been sound statesmen.  
 You can not have been an interesting orator.  
 He might have been a learned divine.  
 You would have been an adroit reasoner.  
 May not he be an eminent professor ?  
 Can he not be a skilful agriculturist ?  
 Might not these gentlemen be American travelers ?

Could he be my inveterate enemy?  
 May not they have been noted musicians?  
 Can they not have been secret agents?  
 Would not he have been a vigilant watchman?

Imperative mode.

Present tense.

Be a paper-maker.	Be architects.
Be thou a book-binder.	Be carpenters.
Do not be an author.	Do not be vagabonds.

A few other verbs are occasionally used in this structure ; as,

His son became a famous bishop.

This lad may become a great financier.

These pupils might become excellent grammarians.

The governor has become a distinguished senator.

Trim struts a soldier.	She lived a Christian.
------------------------	------------------------

He stands a spectator.	Stephen died a martyr.
------------------------	------------------------

She walks a queen.	He goes a captain.
--------------------	--------------------

The calf grows an ox.	Charles remains a student.
-----------------------	----------------------------

THE NOMINATIVE CASE, THE PASSIVE VERB, AND  
 THE ADJECTIVE.

The verbs *call*, *denominate*, *consider*, *regard*, *account*, *make*,  
 and *bear*, are the principal verbs used in this structure.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The wheat is called prime.

The cloth was denominated superfine.

This student has been considered talented.

The note had been regarded genuine.

The candidates will be accounted worthy.

The deficiency may be made good.

The man may have been born blind.

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*The wheat is called excellent.*

*Excellent* is an adjective, and belongs to *wheat*. Rule.—  
 Adjectives belong to nouns.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE, THE PASSIVE VERB, AND THE  
NOMINATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

The verbs *call*, *denominate*, *consider*, *regard*, *account*, *make*, *bear*, *choose*, *elect*, and *crown*, are the principal verbs used in this structure.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

These mechanics are called good workmen.  
This medicine is denominated calomel.  
This lady has been considered a good teacher.  
This preacher had been regarded a fine speaker.  
This senator will be accounted a strong debater.  
My brother may be made a supreme judge.  
This nobleman must have been born a lord.  
This politician might have been chosen governor.  
This able statesman may be elected president.  
The prince will be crowned king.

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*These mechanics are called good workmen.*

*Workmen* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, and nominative case after *are called*. Rule.—Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as to them, when both words refer to the same thing.

THE END OF THE FIRST PART.

THE  
ANALYTIC AND SYNTHETIC  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

---

PART SECOND.

---

SENTENCE.

A SENTENCE is an association of words, or a combination of two or more associations of words, making complete sense.

The associations of words which form sentences, or constitute parts of sentences, are called *structures*.

THE STRUCTURES.

A STRUCTURE is a single predicative word, or two or more parts of speech forming a distinct association, or group.

The language is formed of thirty-five predicative structures and one phrase.

The general names of the structures are *predication*, *predicate*, and *phrase*.



The nomenclature of the predicative structures is founded on the word *predicate*.

A *predicate* is a single word asserting action or being, or an association of words in which action or being is asserted.

The predicates are divided into *sentensic* and *insentensic*.

A *sentensic predicate* is a predicate which may be used with a subject, or nominative case, as an essential element of a sentence.

An *insentensic predicate* is a subordinate structure which can not be used with a subject, or nominative case, as an essential element of a sentence.

The insentensic predicates are formed from the sentensic predicates by changing the finite verb to the participle, to the gerundive, or to the verb in the infinitive mode.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF PREDICATES.

The predicates are divided into intransitive, transitive, passive, intransitive post-adjective, intransitive post-substantive, passive post-adjective, and passive post-substantive.

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE PREDICATES.

##### SENTENSIC PREDICATES.

##### INSENTENSIC PREDICATES.

##### Intransitive.

— walk ;	walking ;	to walk.
— faded ;	fading ;	to fade.
— have prated ;	having prated ;	to have prated.

##### Transitive.

— catch fish ;	catching fish ;	to catch fish.
— wrote a letter ;	writing a letter ;	to write a letter.
— have built a car ;	having built a car ;	to have built a car.

## SENTENSIC PREDICATES.

## INSENTENSIC PREDICATES.

## Passive.

- is suspected ;      being suspected ;      to be suspected.
- was instructed ;      instructed ;      to be instructed.
- has been seen ;      having been seen ;      to have been seen.

## Intransitive post-adjective.

- am cautious ;      being cautious ;      to be cautious.
- were obedient ;      being obedient ;      to be obedient.
- will be true ;      having been true ;      to have been true.

## Intransitive post-substantive.

- has been a farmer ;      being a farmer ;      to be a farmer.
- will be a scholar ;      being a scholar ;      to be a scholar.
- may be a nun ;      having been a nun ;      to have been a nun.

## Passive post-adjective.

- is called prime ;      being called prime ;      to be called prime.
- was made good ;      made good ;      to be made good.
- was born blind ;      being born blind ;      to be born blind.

## Passive post-substantive.

- is called a fox ;      being called a fox ;      to be called a fox.
- was born a lord ;      born a lord ;      to be born a lord.
- will be made king ;      made king ;      to be made king.

As exhibited in the preceding synopsis, there are seven sentensic predicates, and fourteen insentensic predicates, which form, or aid in forming, the thirty-five predicative structures.

## EXPLANATION OF TERMS.

*Element*, a constituent part.

*Essential element*, or an *essential*, an element necessary to the formation of.

*Accessory element*, or an *accessory*, an element subordinate to an essential element.

A noun and a pronoun in the possessive case, and words placed before the noun, and belonging to it on the principle of the article and the adjective, are accessory elements, or accessories. The adverb is also accessory.

## CLASSIFICATION OF PREDICATIVE STRUCTURES.

The predicative structures are divided into predication, participial predicates, gerundive predicates, prepositional gerundive predicates, and infinitive predicates.

## THE PREDICATIONS.

A PREDICATION is an association of words forming a proposition.

## CLASSIFICATION OF PREDICATIONS.

The predication is divided into intransitive, transitive, passive, intransitive post-adjective, intransitive post-substantive, passive post-adjective, and passive post-substantive.

*Subject*, a word or an association of words of which a finite verb predicates something.

*Simple subject*, a nominative case without an accessory.

*Complex subject*, a nominative case with an accessory or with accessories.

*Simple predicate*, a predicate formed by an essential element or essential elements.

*Complex predicate*, a predicate formed by an essential element or essential elements and one accessory or more.

*Analysis*, the resolution of a sentence into its elements.

*Etymological analysis*, the resolution of a sentence by individual words, or parts of speech.

*Logical analysis*, the resolution of a sentence by its logical parts.

*Synthesis*, the union of parts into a sentence or a structure.

*Syntactical synthesis*, the union of parts of speech in a structure, or of structures in a sentence, expressed by the rules of syntax.

*Logical synthesis*, the designation of a structure by a logical name, which indicates its element or elements.

## THE INTRANSITIVE PREDICATION.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive predication, are a nominative case and an intransitive verb.

The logical elements of the intransitive predication are a subject and an intransitive sentensic predicate.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I sit.	The workmen perspire.
Profit accrued.	Industrious men thrive.
Charles has relented.	The club has adjourned.
Difficulties may arise.	Your dog might bite.
Water congeals.	His tongue will run.
Birds can fly.	Every pupil might learn.
Horses prance.	This academy might prosper.
Time will elapse.	Such principles prevail.
Consequences ensue.	The twelve jurymen appeared.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*I sit. The workmen perspire.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*I* is a personal pronoun, singular number, first person, and nominative case to *sit*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Sit* is an irregular, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, singular number, first person, and agrees with *I*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

## Logical analysis.

*I*—Subject.

*Sit*—Intransitive sentensic predicate.

*The workmen*—Subject.

*Perspire*—Intransitive sentensic predicate.

## • Logical synthesis.

*I sit*—Intransitive predication.

*The workmen perspire*—Intransitive predication.

## THE TRANSITIVE PREDICATION.

The essential etymological elements of the transitive predication, are a nominative case, a transitive verb, and an objective case.

The logical elements of the transitive predication, are a subject and a transitive sentensic predicate.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The captain cast anchor.

Our family physician prescribed a remedy.

The general has issued his orders.

The boatman should have thrown a line.

Our shipwrights have constructed a stanch steamer.

The young lady is adjusting her hair.

The emperor may have banished the rebels.

A large army has besieged the city.

The strong light dazzled my eyes.

Barbarians have defaced the monument.

Mind your diction.

Relinquish every unjust claim.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The captain cast anchor.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *captain*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Captain* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *cast*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Cast* is an irregular, transitive verb, indicative mode, indefinite perfect tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *captain*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

*Anchor* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *cast*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

#### Logical analysis.

*The captain*—Subject.

*Cast anchor*—Transitive sentensic predicate.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The captain cast anchor*—Transitive predication.

### THE PASSIVE PREDICATION.

The essential etymological elements of the passive predication, are a nominative case and a passive verb.

The logical elements of the passive predication, are a subject and a passive sentensic predicate.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The Spanish treaty should be ratified.

The prisoners may be liberated.

The contract should be modified.

Our honor must be vindicated.

Some words may be abbreviated.

Eminent success may be anticipated.

Can the wolf be domesticated?

Can such enormous evils be eradicated?

The lines have been obliterated.

These difficulties might be obviated.

A jury has been impanneled.

Can not this meadow be irrigated?

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The Spanish treaty should be ratified.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *treaty*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Spanish* is a proper adjective, and belongs to *treaty*. Rule.  
—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Treaty* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *should be ratified*. Rule.  
—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Should be ratified* is a regular, passive verb, potential mode, indefinite perfect tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *treaty*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

#### Logical analysis.

*The Spanish treaty*—Subject.

*Should be ratified*—Passive sentensic predicate.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The Spanish treaty should be ratified*—Passive predication.

#### THE INTRANSITIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PREDICATION.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-adjective predication, are a nominative case, an intransitive verb, and an adjective.

The logical elements of the intransitive post-adjective predication, are a subject and an intransitive post-adjective sentensic predicate.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The cold has been intense.

Their countenances were ruddy.

The steel may become rusty.

Every tongue will be silent.

The sluggish water was turbid.

This rich banker died intestate.

The morning vapors may be noxious.

The onset must have been furious.

The angry beast was ferocious.

His evening discourse was impressive.



The business may become lucrative.  
 The lazy alderman grows corpulent.  
 Your friend will remain steadfast.  
 Your argument does not hold good.  
 This politician stands pre-eminent.  
 The potatoes will boil soft.  
 The medicine tastes bitter.  
 The jaded animal looks gaunt.  
 Be piteous. Be merciful.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The cold has been intense.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to *cold*. Rule.—The article *the* belongs to nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*Cold* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *has been*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Has been* is an irregular, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present perfect tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *cold*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

*Intense* is a common adjective, and belongs to *cold*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

## Logical analysis.

*The cold*—Subject.

*Has been intense*—Intransitive post-adjective sententia predicate.

## Logical synthesis.

*The cold has been intense*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

## THE INTRANSITIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATION.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-substantive predication, are a nominative case, an intransitive verb, and a nominative case after the verb.

The logical elements of the intransitive post-substantive predication, are a subject and an intransitive post-substantive sentensic predicate.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Vicious boys are troublesome neighbors.  
 This industrious man was a useful citizen.  
 James has been an indefatigable student.  
 This eminent scholar should be a professor.  
 That horse must be a Canadian pony.  
 The proposed way would be a tedious route.  
 Our old friend has become an archbishop.  
 This divine has been a successful missionary.  
 Have not the two men been enemies?  
 She moves a stately queen.  
 The young man goes supercargo.  
 His brother remains chief clerk.  
 Be a good boy. Be a silversmith.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Vicious boys are troublesome neighbors.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Vicious* is a common adjective, and belongs to *boys*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Boys* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, and nominative case to *are*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Troublesome* is a common adjective, and belongs to *neighbors*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Neighbors* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, and nominative case after *are*. Rule.—Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as to them, when both words refer to the same thing.

#### Logical analysis.

*Vicious boys*—Subject.

*Are troublesome neighbors*—Intransitive post-substantive sentensic predicate.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Vicious boys are troublesome neighbors*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.

#### THE PASSIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PREDICATION.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-adjective predication, are a nominative case, a passive verb, and an adjective.

The logical elements of the passive post-adjective predication, are a subject and a passive post-adjective sentensic predicate.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The conditions may be considered unreasonable.

The candidate is deemed unworthy.

These lands are called fertile.

The inhabitants are accounted honest.

Should not my losses be made good?

This young spendthrift was born rich.

The will is regarded genuine.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The conditions may be considered unreasonable.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Conditions* is a common noun, neuter gender, plural number, third person, and nominative case to *may be considered*.

Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*May be considered* is a regular, passive verb, potential mode present tense, plural number, third person, and agrees with *conditions*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

#### THE PASSIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATION.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-substantive predication, are a nominative case, a passive verb, and a nominative case after the verb.

The logical elements of the passive post-substantive predication, are a subject and a passive post-substantive sentensic predicate.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

These Indian warriors are called braves.

That machine is called a cotton-gin.

This subject may be considered a difficult one.

The cat is regarded a faithless animal.

That officer has been accounted a gallant soldier.

The office is deemed a sinecure.

This young recruit will be made a sergeant.

That distinguished statesman was not born a lord.

Three intelligent planters should be appointed umpires.

George Washington was chosen president.

The king might have been crowned emperor.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*These Indian warriors are called braves.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*These* is a definite adjective pronoun, plural number, and belongs to *warriors*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*Indian* is a proper adjective, and belongs to *warriors*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Warriors* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, and nominative case to *are called*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Are called* is a regular, passive verb, indicative mode, present tense, plural number, third person, and agrees with *warriors*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

*Braves* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, and nominative case after *are called*. Rule.—Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as to them, when both words refer to the same thing.

#### Logical analysis.

*These Indian warriors*—Subject.

*Are called braves*—Passive post-substantive sentensic predicate.

#### Logical synthesis.

*These Indian warriors are called braves*—Passive post-substantive predication.

#### REMARKS AND SUGGESTIONS.

The predications have now been twice discussed; once in "PART FIRST," by the ordinary method, and once again in "PART SECOND," by the same method and by logical analysis and synthesis. When pupils have been thoroughly instructed thus far, they will be competent to read these structures by name, without going through the formalities of "Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis." When, however, a pupil is at fault in naming a predication, he may be required to analyze the association, at least in part, by way of correction. Pupils may also analyze these structures occasionally, to keep the formulas fresh in the memory. The author has learned from experience and observation that much parsing by long formulas prevents the formation of a taste for the study of grammar, or destroys it when formed.

The parts of speech and the structures which have not yet been reached, will be once discussed as they occur in their natural order. The classification of structures renders it easy to refer to the desired formula in every case of doubt or perplexity.

## THE ADVERB.

AN ADVERB is a word added to a word predicating action or being, to an adjective, or to another adverb, to express time, place, degree, manner, means, or cause.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs capable of expressing different degrees of intensity are compared by degrees like adjectives.

The comparisons are effected by adding *r* or *er* to form the comparative, and *st* or *est* to form the superlative; or by prefixing *more* or *less* to form the comparative, and *most* or *least* to form the superlative.

Comparison by *er* and *est*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Soon,	sooner,	soonest.
Often,	oftener,	oftenest.
Late,	later,	latest.
Near,	nearer,	nearest, or next.
Long,	longer,	longest.
Fast,	faster,	fastest.

Comparison by *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bravely,	more bravely,	most bravely.
Swiftly,	more swiftly,	most swiftly.
Bravely,	less bravely,	least bravely.
Swiftly,	less swiftly,	least swiftly.

## Irregular comparisons.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Well,	better,	best.
Badly, or ill,	worse,	worst.
Little,	less,	least.
Much,	more,	most.
Far,	farther,	farthest.
Forth,	further,	furthest.



## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, and gerundives.

Adverbs qualify adjectives.

Adverbs qualify adverbs.

## CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are divided into the classes of time, of place, of degree, of manner, and of means or cause.

## ADVERBS OF TIME.

Adverbs of time are subdivided as follows :

## 1. Into those of time present ; as,

Now,	nowadays,	straightway,
to-day,	presently,	directly,
yet,	instantly,	forthwith.

## 2. Into those of time past ; as,

Already,	yesterday,	hitherto,
just now,	formerly,	since,
lately,	anciently,	long ago,
recently,	once,	long since.
ere now,	heretofore,	

## 3. Into those of time to come ; as,

To-morrow,	henceforward,	ere long,
hereafter,	by and by,	shortly.
henceforth,	soon,	

## 4. Into those of time relative ; as,

When,	before,	early,
then,	meanwhile,	late,
first,	seasonably,	afterward,
just,	betimes,	afterwards.

## 5. Into those of time absolute ; as,

Always,	eternally,	incessantly,
ever,	forever,	endlessly,
never,	perpetually,	evermore,
aye,	continually,	everlastingly.



## 6. Into those of time repeated; as,

Oft,	seldom,	yearly,
often,	rarely,	annually,
again,	now and then,	once,
occasionally,	daily,	twice,
frequently,	weekly,	thrice,
sometimes,	monthly,	three times.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The family is now prosperous.  
 We shall visit the hospital to-day.  
 The case has not yet been settled.  
 Strange events occur nowadays.  
 Dinner will be ready presently.  
 We must call a surgeon instantly.  
 "Straightway they left their nets."  
 We must have our horses directly.  
 Orders were given forthwith.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The family is now prosperous.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Now* is an adverb of time present, and qualifies *is*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs.

## Logical analysis.

*The family*—Subject.

*Is now prosperous*—Intransitive post-adjective sentensic predicate.

## Logical synthesis.

*The family is now prosperous*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*We should visit the hospital to-day*—Transitive predication.

*The case has not yet been settled*—Passive predication.

*Dinner will be ready presently*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

Already the news is cheering.  
The president can not see you just now.  
Your patient has lately had a chill.  
Yesterday the obnoxious law was repealed.  
I formerly knew such a man.  
This doctrine was believed anciently.  
This mechanic was once a judge.  
The culprit has heretofore borne a good character.  
Hitherto the Lord hath helped us.  
This good man has long since been dead.

To-morrow we shall leave our native land.  
You may hereafter regret your decision.  
Henceforth I will not use tobacco.  
You will repent by and by.  
The state prisoners will soon learn their destiny.  
Erelong the people will discover their mistake.

When will you visit us ?  
We then sung a hymn.  
The sermon has just been commenced.  
I have known such men before.  
The farmer rises betimes.

We have not always done our duty.  
My mother is ever kind.  
I have never seen that steamer.  
Good men will be eternally happy.  
The ocean is continually moving.  
The insects annoyed us incessantly.  
"We evermore praise Thee."

I have often repeated the experiment.  
"I will not again curse the ground."  
He has occasionally visited us.  
Such an event seldom occurs.  
The paper is published weekly.  
The payments are made yearly.

## ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Adverbs of place are subdivided as follows :

## 1. Into those of place in which ; as,

Where,	round,	without,
here,	somewhere,	whereabout,
there,	anywhere,	whereabouts,
yonder,	elsewhere,	hereabout,
above,	everywhere,	hereabouts,
below,	nowhere,	thereabout,
about,	within,	thereabouts.

## 2. Into those of place to which ; as,

Whither,	back,	homeward,
hither,	forth,	inward,
thither,	aside,	upward,
in,	ashore,	downward,
up,	aloft,	backward,
down,	home,	forward.

In conversation and familiar prose, *where* is often used for *whither*, *here* for *hither*, and *there* for *thither*.

## 3. Into those of place from which ; as,

Whence,	away,	far,
hence,	off,	remotely.
thence,	out,	

## 4. Into those of order of place ; as,

First,	secondly,	thirdly, &c.
--------	-----------	--------------

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Where am I ?	The vessel is below.
I am here.	Can your son run about ?
They are all there.	I saw the account somewhere.
Yonder is my house.	Is the fact anywhere stated ?
Is the captain within ?	Has he seen my oxen hereabout ?

"Thine enemies shall compass thee round."

We can obtain accommodations elsewhere.

God is everywhere present.

Clouds are nowhere visible.

Is your master thereabout?

Whereabouts did you meet my team?

Whither goest thou?

The sloop is coming up.

Come hither.

The apostles went forth.

Thither he must go.

The kite was wafted upward.

Walk in.

Do not go backward.

"Turn back our nature's rapid tide."

The ship has been driven ashore.

Several sailors have gone aloft.

The children must go home early.

The ship is homeward bound.

The bears brought down the stocks.

Bring forward your strong reasons.

Whence shall we obtain good news?

When shall we go hence?

The young man may have been enticed away.

The secret has leaked out.

He could not walk far.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Where am I? The vessel is below.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Where* is an adverb of place, and qualifies *am*. Rule.—  
Adverbs qualify verbs.

Logical analysis.

*Where am*—Intransitive sentensic predicate.

*I*—Subject.

Logical synthesis.

*Where am I?*—Intransitive predication.

*The vessel is below*—Intransitive predication.

## ADVERBS OF DEGREE.

Adverbs of degree are subdivided as follows :

1. Into those of excess or abundance ; as,

Much,	mainly,	quite,
more,	mostly,	stark,
most,	generally,	exceedingly,
too,	entirely,	excessively,
very,	full,	extravagantly,
greatly,	fully,	intolerably,
for,	completely,	immeasurably,
besides,	perfectly,	inconceivably,
chiefly,	wholly,	singularly,
principally,	totally,	infinitely.

2. Into those of equality or sufficiency ; as,

Enough,	adequately,	just,
sufficiently,	proportionally,	exactly,
competently,	equally,	precisely.

3. Into those of deficiency or abatement as,

Little,	hardly,	nearly,
less,	only,	almost,
least,	but,	well-nigh,
scarcely,	partly,	somewhat.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Assistance came much too late.

The later crops will be very abundant.

The danger has been greatly magnified.

Your expectations are far too brilliant.

The people are generally temperate.

Opposition has entirely ceased.

The demand will be fully supplied.

The lesson was perfectly learned.

The beast is totally blind.

The lady is quite young.  
 The young man has been stark mad.  
 The poor beast is exceedingly thirsty.  
 The old fellow is excessively penurious.  
 The preacher is intolerably dull.  
 The distance is incalculably great.  
 That spinster is singularly prudish.  
 The Deity is infinitely wise.  
 The old carriage is good enough.  
 The argument was not sufficiently clear.  
 The institution is adequately endowed.  
 The several apartments should be proportionally large.  
 The two animals are equally beautiful.  
 The rope is just long enough.  
 Your calculation may not be exactly right.  
 The star is immeasurably distant.  
 The cider is a little too sour.  
 The boat scarcely stems the tide.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Assistance came much too late.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Much* is an adverb of degree, and qualifies *too*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify adverbs.

*Too* is an adverb, and qualifies *late*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify adverbs.

*Late* is an adverb, and qualifies *came*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs.

## Logical analysis.

*Assistance*—Subject.

*Came much too late*—Intransitive sentensic predicate.

## Logical synthesis.

*Assistance came much too late*—Intransitive predication.

*The later crops will be very abundant*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

The steak is hardly done.  
 His opinions are only conjectural.  
 The family owns but fifty poor acres.  
 I partly believe the report.  
 Nearly every man was slain.  
 My patient is almost well.  
 My foot had well-nigh slipped.  
 The project is somewhat ridiculous.

## ADVERBS OF MANNER.

Adverbs of manner are subdivided as follows :

1. Into those of manner from quality ; as,
 

Well,	ably,	agreeably,
ill,	industriously,	scientifically,
soundly,	diligently,	adroitly,
patiently,	bitterly,	severely,
quietly,	fashionably,	dexterously,
attentively,	safely,	tastefully,
obligingly,	skilfully,	undesignedly,
vexatiously,	earnestly,	virtually,
angrily,	tediously,	fantastically.

Adverbs of manner from quality are chiefly formed by adding *ly* to adjectives of quality. This class of adverbs, admitting of degrees of intensity, may generally be compared ; and *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*, the chief means of the comparison, may be regarded as distinct adverbs of degree, or as parts of the adverbs with which they may be associated.

2. Into those of affirmation or assent ; as,
 

Yes,	indeed,	doubtlessly,
yea,	surely,	undoubtedly,
ay,	certainly,	assuredly,
truly,	doubtless,	amen.

3. Into those of negation ; as,
 

No,	not,	nay.
-----	------	------

5. Into those of doubt or uncertainty ; as,
 

Perhaps,	possibly,	peradventure.
haply,	perchance,	



## 5. Into those of mode or way ; as,

Thus,	noway,	asunder,
so,	nowise,	headlong,
how,	otherwise,	namely,
somehow,	lengthwise,	particularly,
nohow,	across,	extempore,
anyhow,	together,	hesitatingly,
like,	apart,	trippingly.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I sleep soundly.                      We hear attentively.  
 You sit patiently.                    You stay obligingly.  
 The horse stands quietly.        Interests clash vexatiously.  
 The work is well done.            The city is ably represented.  
 The workmen have been laboring industriously.  
 The several classes have been studying diligently.  
 The lady has been weeping bitterly.  
 Your barber cuts hair fashionably.  
 Mariners safely traverse vast oceans.  
 The physician has treated his patient skilfully.  
 Those lawyers are earnestly defending their clients.  
 The young people are spending the evening agreeably.  
 The young man was fantastically dressed.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*I sleep soundly.    The city is ably represented.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Soundly* is an adverb of manner, and qualifies *sleep*.    Rule  
—Adverbs qualify verbs.

Logical analysis.

*I*—Subject.

*Sleep soundly*—Intransitive sentensic predicate.

Logical synthesis.

*I sleep soundly*—Intransitive predication.

*The city is ably represented*—Passive predication.

The several curiosities were tediously described.

The lecturer treated the subject scientifically.

That angler catches trout adroitly.

The careless servant was severely chastised.

The amputation was dexterously performed.

The room will be tastefully decorated.

Was the offense given undesignedly ?

Shall you see my son to-morrow ? Yes.

Will you go away ? Yea.

Do you sustain the bill ? Ay.

I saw the distinguished general to-day. Truly.

I love my friends most cordially. Indeed, you do.

Can you sustain your present position ? Most certainly.

Will the banker honor the draft ? Undoubtedly.

Do you express your feelings unequivocally ? Most assuredly.

May the Lord bless you. Amen.

Truly, Solomon was a wise man.

Indeed, I can not give my consent.

He will, doubtless, come again.

“ That awful day will surely come.”

Will you still wander ? No ; I will not be a vagabond.

Do you sustain the resolution ? Nay.

Will you not visit us again ?

“ Perhaps he will admit my plea.”

The party may possibly elect their candidate.

You may haply take the wrong road.

Peradventure the hunter may hit the deer.

Thus have I been requited.

How can we best reward this faithful servant ?

The difficulty might be obviated somehow.

The affirmatives *yes*, *ay*, and *yea*, and the negatives *no* and *nay*, stand for the predication implied in the answer. They should, therefore, be treated, in parsing, as being independent of other words. The same or similar remarks are applicable to *amen* when used in earnest affirmation or petition. Other adverbs used alone in reply, qualify some word in the part of the predication understood.

The purchaser can noway fulfil his contract.  
 The other party is nowise implicated.  
 Place the several pieces lengthwise.  
 The two friends will travel together.  
 The mountain was rent asunder.  
 The subject was not particularly discussed.  
 This orator generally speaks extempore.  
 The speaker utters his words hesitatingly.  
 The little girl came trippingly along.

## ADVERBS OF MEANS OR CAUSE.

Why,	hereby,	wherefore,
whereby,	thereby,	therefore.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Why is your daughter so diffident?  
 "Whereby shall I know this?"  
 Hereby we may learn our high destiny.  
 Thereby good shall come.  
 "Wherefore didst thou doubt?"  
 The gentleman is absent; I will, therefore, call again.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Why is your daughter so diffident?*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Why* is an adverb of cause, and qualifies *is*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs.

*So* is an adverb of degree, and qualifies *diffident*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify adjectives.

## Logical analysis.

*Why is so diffident*—Intransitive post-adjective sentensic predicate.

*Your daughter*—Subject.

## Logical synthesis.

*Why is your daughter so diffident?*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

## THE PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS connect prepositional structures to pred-ications, to sentensic and insentensic predicates, and to prepositional phrases.

## LIST OF PREPOSITIONS.

About,	besides,	past,
above,	between,	round,
across,	betwixt,	since,
after,	beyond,	through,
against,	but,	throughout,
along,	by,	till,
amid,	concerning,	to,
amidst,	down,	toward,
among,	during,	towards,
amongst,	ere,	under,
around,	for,	underneath,
at,	from,	until,
athwart,	in,	unto,
before,	into,	up,
behind,	of,	upon,
below,	off,	with,
beneath,	on,	within,
beside,	out,	without.
	over,	

## THE PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE.

The essential elements of a prepositional phrase are a preposition, and a noun or a pronoun in the objective case.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

Prepositions govern the objective case.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Of.

This great man is of ignoble race.

A part of the passengers escaped unhurt.

The lad received the parcel of a stranger.

Inert matter cannot move of itself.

This old soldier was one of Wellington's life-guards.

The shawl is made of camel's hair.

I am very fond of the study of grammar.

Numa was the second king of ancient Rome.

Washington was a man of consummate prudence.

I have carefully read the epistles of St. Paul.

This senator is a man of rare abilities.

Cedar is a wood of great durability.

David was the son of Jesse.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*This great man is of ignoble race.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Of* is a preposition, and connects the phrase *Of ignoble race* to *is*. Rule.—Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

*Ignoble* is a common adjective, and belongs to *race*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

*Race* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *of*. Rule.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

Logical synthesis.

*This great man is*—Intransitive predication.

*Of ignoble race*—Prepositional phrase.

*A part escaped unhurt*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*Of the passengers*—Prepositional phrase.

*The lad received the parcel*—Transitive predication.

*Of a stranger*—Prepositional phrase.

## From.

All men have sprung from Adam.

Light proceeds from luminous bodies.

Rain falls from the clouds.

The sheep will be separated from the goats.

Albany is one hundred and fifty miles from New York.

The attorney elicited the facts from the witness.

We draw conclusions from premises.

We may draw wine from a pipe.

The teacher has drawn his rules from experience.

From this jury a candid investigation is expected.

## After.

"After supper he took the cup."

This event occurred after that time.

After the regular troops came the militia.

"Ye shall not go after other gods."

The gentleman will soon be here after his daughter.

Do not walk after the flesh.

The machine has been built after the model.

Your friend inquired after your health.

## For.

This merchant pays cash for country produce.

The president was proxy for many stockholders.

The administrator acted for the heirs.

Several missionaries lately sailed for China.

Do you receive such absurd accounts for truth?

He was born for great achievements.

Strong fortresses have been built for general defense.

The medicine is good for the bronchitis.

The whole assembly wept for joy.

I can not attend to the affair for want of time.

The nation was agitated for many months.

The young man was sent abroad for an education.

The measure was reserved for a future occasion.

We should be prepared for every emergency.

He has an inclination for strong drink.

We are all for a republican government.  
He was condemned for a malefactor.

Before.

The little boy may ride before me.  
"Wherewithal shall I come before the Lord."  
The case was brought before the Supreme Court.  
"The world was all before them."  
A beautiful tree stood before the house.  
This vessel sails well before the wind.  
We shall probably reach home before night.

Behind.

The lad rode behind his father.  
The weary traveler lagged behind his companions.  
The steed left his rider behind him.  
Many of our school-books are behind the age.  
The sun was concealed behind a cloud.  
"They cast thy law behind their backs."  
Paul was not behind any other apostle.

Above.

The birds skim along above the tall grass.  
"I saw a light above the brightness of the sun."  
That exalted station is above my reach.  
The water rose above twenty feet.  
The huge animal weighs above a ton.  
"The serpent is cursed above all cattle."  
The subject is above my comprehension.  
A noble mind is ever above mean designs.

On and upon.

The hardy soldier sometimes sleeps on the ground.  
Rain falls on the thirsty earth.  
This musician plays skilfully on the harp.  
Troy is situated on the eastern bank of the Hudson.  
The vessel is on the shore.  
The fleet is on the American coast.



We will surrender the fortress on honorable conditions.  
We should abstain from labor on the Sabbath.  
On that occasion he displayed great presence of mind.  
He then left the city on urgent business.  
He made the declaration on his honor.  
The lady relied implicitly on the pledge.

*Upon* has the meaning and application of *on*, and its use might be dispensed with.

Over.

The gulls were flying about over the lake.  
The deer leaped beautifully over the fence.  
These beings wander to and fro over the earth.  
His tender mercies are over all his works.  
The good lady prepared breakfast over night.  
The water has come up over the bank.  
The orphan asylum is situated over the way.  
That persecuted man has finally triumphed over his foes.  
How did you get over that difficulty?

Below.

We dwell below the skies.  
The money of that bank is below par.  
These men are below the common stature.  
Their propositions are below consideration.

Under.

The people stood under their umbrellas.  
The province has been under foreign governors.  
We can see the objects under the clear water.  
The goods will be sold under the regular price.  
Your mind lies under false impressions.  
The crime was forbidden under severe penalties.  
The senate has the subject under consideration.  
We live under the gospel dispensation.  
The young man is under age.  
We now do business under another firm.  
He has left evidence under his own hand.  
The vessel will soon be under way.

## Beneath and underneath.

Beneath the ice flows a crystal stream.  
The camel rose beneath a heavy burden.  
The people are groaning beneath oppression.  
Such petty machinations are beneath your station.  
Underneath this stone lie his remains.  
The mole makes his way underneath the surface.  
There is something mysterious underneath this covering.  
We may sleep comfortably underneath these blankets.

## In.

The governor resides in this house.  
This gentleman is sojourning in Philadelphia.  
Will you have more cream in your coffee?  
I found my friends in great perplexity.  
The emigrants were in good spirits.  
Clothe your ideas in more appropriate words.  
I will consent to any thing in reason.  
Not one person in ten could endure such exertions.  
We can not answer for one sin in a thousand.  
We ask blessings in the name of the great Mediator.  
These grievances have been set forth in the name of the people.  
Vast treasures lie hid in these mountains.  
There is much excellent land in these valleys.  
Your letter was received in due time.  
The young farmers attend school in the winter.

## Into.

The governor has just gone into this house.  
Shall I pour more cream into your coffee?  
In sadness we gazed into the prisoner's cell.  
That creek flows into a larger stream.  
Infuse sympathetic feeling into your oratory.  
Put your ideas into more appropriate words.  
Ice may be easily converted into water.  
The tract may be divided into several farms.  
We are all liable to be seduced into error.  
The two brothers have gone into business together.

## At.

There is a stranger at the front door.  
The proposition was made at our first interview.  
At all events, you should be there at the proper time.  
My neighbor sold his farm at a great sacrifice.  
The rifle company were shooting at a mark.  
This gentleman lives at his ease in the State of Ohio.  
The estate can be turned into cash at will.  
The banker will pay the draft at sight.  
Belligerent nations are nations at war.  
This farmer has means at command.  
This brave man deserves well at our hands.  
My brother is good at husbandry.

## By.

The company were seated by a warm fire.  
The wild beast passed by the sheep-fold in the night.  
The thief crept stealthily by the sleepy watchman.  
The hunting party could find their way by moonlight.  
The body was not stolen away by night.  
Many fortunes have been gained by speculation.  
This mechanic acquired a competency by industry.  
This merchant sends tobacco to Bremen by the ship-load.  
How came this man by that fine plantation?  
By this time, the ship may have arrived.  
Woven fabrics are generally sold by the yard.  
Southern planters sell corn by the barrel.  
The defendant appeared by attorney.  
My stock is represented by proxy.

## With.

The lady writes beautifully with a metallic pen.  
I have been afflicted with intense pain in the side.  
I am much pleased with my rustic cane.  
We have struggled long with adversity.  
The missionary gave to me a Bible with good advice.  
This gentleman traveled with me from New York.

The lady has intrusted me with the secret.  
His present testimony agrees with his former statements.  
You may share the apples with the rest of the children.

Without.

How can we mow grass without a scythe?  
Some persons subsist without apparent means.  
Idle people sometimes live without labor.  
The two animals are lying without the gate.  
You can not leave home without damage.

Within.

The noble lord keeps his deer within his park.  
A large ship is within sight.  
Those events are not within my recollection.  
The city is within a league of this place.  
I may be in Philadelphia within a month.  
We must keep our expenses within our income.

Through.

The carpenter bored through the plank.  
The company passed through the gate into the park.  
The birds flit beautifully through the air.  
Vast sums of money have passed through these fingers.  
We gain a knowledge of material things through the senses.  
The cowardly thief trembled through fear.  
"Sanctify them through thy truth."

Throughout.

These principles prevail throughout Europe.  
Throughout these proceedings tyranny is manifest.  
This company served throughout the war.  
He was confined to his room throughout the winter.

To and unto.

The family are going to church.  
The line of the lot extends to the water's edge.  
The widow bound her son to a good trade.

These letters were addressed to a friend.  
This occupation is suited to his taste.  
Add to you faith virtue.  
We may keep this information to ourselves.  
The Christian is not deaf to the cries of distress.  
The youth was lured to his ruin.  
The gentleman was painted to the life.  
Unto Thee will I direct my prayer.  
The Lord Jesus said unto them.  
Ye are come unto Mount Sion.

Against.

"His hand will be against every man."  
The decree is against national law.  
There are ten in favor of the measure for one against it.  
The boat made slow progress against the tide.  
The court decided against the plaintiff.  
The bee lays up honey against winter.

Toward and towards.

"He set his face toward the wilderness."  
"His eye shall be evil toward his brother."  
The family remained there toward fifteen years.  
The horses made their way towards home.

About.

The surgeon wound a bandage about the limb.  
The guests sat about a blazing fire.  
The tree will measure three feet about the trunk.  
The colts capered about the pasture.  
"I must be about my Father's business."  
He has lately sold about five hundred acres of wild land.

Round and around.

The teacher boarded round the district.  
The sun gives light around the earth.  
The sailors wound the cable round the windlass.  
The citizens gathered around the traveler.  
The senator got round his opponent in the debate.

## Beside.

The young Indian stood beside his father.  
We sat together beside a purling stream.  
The poor man is beside himself.

## Besides.

“There was a famine in the land besides the first famine.”  
No individual was there besides this man.  
The drover owes the bank a large debt besides this sum.

## Amid and amidst.

The eagle soars amidst the clouds.  
The apples hang thick amidst the leaves.  
This clergyman lives happily amidst his people.  
Amid the waves the vessel glides.

*Amid* is used chiefly in poetry.

## Among and amongst.

Slim saplings grow amongst lofty trees.  
Among all his foes this man was the most inveterate.  
This artist spent many years amongst the savages.  
This man is one among a thousand.

## Across and athwart.

Across the street you may find a magistrate.  
A high fence had been built across the road.  
A meteor shot across the heavens.  
A piratical vessel came athwart our course.

## Beyond.

The town is situated beyond the prairie.  
The subject is not beyond comprehension.  
Your estimate is beyond the mark.  
These facts have been established beyond doubt.  
The boy has worked beyond division.

## Along.

The animals were passing along the road.  
The troops marched along the bank of the river.

Along the sky the meteor glides.  
Inhabitants were seen along the shore.

Past.

It is now past twelve o'clock.  
The disease is past cure.  
We have gone past the boundary.  
The excitement is past all precedence.

Between and betwixt.

A state lies between the two cities.  
The monument stands betwixt two stately oaks.  
Much good land lies between the two mountains.  
A quarrel took place betwixt the two men.

Up.

The procession went up Broadway.  
The steamboat is forced up the stream.  
The bear has gone up a hemlock tree.  
Can this team draw the load up the hill?

Down.

The lady fell headlong down the precipice.  
The rafts float down the stream.  
We are passing down the current of life.  
The army has gone down the country.

Off.

The Indians were caught off their guard.  
I have not been off my horse for several hours.  
The family reside somewhere off this lake.  
The landlord warned his tenant off the premises.

Since, till, and until.

I have not been in this city since January.  
Since that time, I have enjoyed good health.  
"He shall be unclean till evening."  
I waited at the hotel till twelve o'clock.



I will remain at home until noon.

They will remain at Washington until the inauguration.

But, during, and concerning.

Who can it be but that mischievous boy?

The soldiers have all gone but one regiment.

I have sold my whole stock of cattle but one cow.

These people serve in bondage during life.

We expect affliction during our earthly pilgrimage.

I speak concerning virtue.

My son wrote to me concerning the purchase of a farm.

By some grammarians, *except*, *excepting*, *pending*, *respecting*, and *touching*, are classified with the prepositions; but *except* can always be parsed as a verb in the imperative mode, and the other words can always be treated as participles. *Notwithstanding* must be regarded a preposition when placed before a pronoun in the objective case. In other cases it is a participle, *not* being taken as if separated from it.

## ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

Several words are adverbs or prepositions according to their application; as,

This measure has been frequently spoken of.

This ingenious device had not been thought of.

This statesman has frequently spoken of the measure.

Mechanics had not thought of this ingenious device.

It was about the space of three hours after.

It was about the space of three hours after that time.

This work might have been done before.

The children went on before.

This work might have been done before this time.

The children went on before us.

The lad came along behind.

There is some evidence yet behind.

The lad came along behind the rest of the company.

There is yet some evidence behind the curtain.

Did you meet a schooner above ?  
 The gentlemen are above at supper.  
 Did you meet a schooner above this place ?  
 The gentlemen are above stairs at supper.  
 The stranger had no coat on.  
 The stranger had no coat on his person.  
 The boat is safe over.  
 They gathered nothing over.  
 The boat is safe over the ferry.  
 They gathered nothing over their need.  
 The cavalcade is close by.  
 The cavalcade is close by us.  
 The project might be carried through.  
 The project might be carried through all obstacles.  
 The cloth is uniformly good throughout.  
 The cloth is uniformly good throughout the piece.  
 The gipsies are strolling about.  
 The gipsies are strolling about the country.  
 The menagerie passed along yesterday.  
 The menagerie passed along this road yesterday.  
 The steamboat has gone up.  
 The steamboat has gone up the river.  
 The steamboat has gone down.  
 The steamboat has gone down the river.  
 I have not seen the gentleman since.  
 I have not seen the gentleman since that time.

## COMPLEX ADVERBS.

A *complex adverb* is composed of two or more adverbs which unitedly qualify the same word.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This doctrine came from above.  
 This merchandise came from afar.  
 The stealthy Indian attacked us from behind.

We have just received information from below.  
Evil thoughts proceed from within.  
Stand from under.  
The treasures of the good man are laid up on high.

## COMPLEX PREPOSITIONS.

A *complex preposition* is composed of two or more prepositions which unitedly govern the same word.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The ore is brought from beneath those hills.  
The mountain rose from amidst the plain.  
The birds issued from amidst the bushes.  
The thief took my watch from beneath my pillow.  
We have just obtained the news from beyond Cayuga bridge.  
The child fell from out the window.  
The dog was driven from under the bed.  
The visitors came from over the mountain.  
The voice issued from between the cherubims.  
The wood was brought from off the mountain.  
The parsonage stands over against the church.  
Plants grow out of the earth.  
The goods were taken out of the house by night.  
Compliance with your wishes is out of my power.  
The book may soon go out of use.  
The seed was sown out of season.  
Many proofs were cited out of the Scriptures.  
The pianoforte is out of tune.  
They shall be delivered out of all their troubles.  
The gentleman is out of order.  
The hounds have gone out of sight.  
We ran ourselves out of breath.  
He granted the favor out of good nature.  
The best paper is made out of linen rags.  
This young man has lately come out of the woods.  
His mind is not in doubt as to this particular fact.

## THE PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE is a word that partakes of the nature of a verb and an adjective.

Participles are derived from verbs. Each complete verb supplies three participles; viz., the *present*, the *perfect*, and the *prior perfect*.

## Intransitive verbs and their participles.

Verb.	Pres. part.	Perf. part.	Prior perf. part.
Go,	going,	gone,	having gone.
Skulk,	skulking,	skulked,	having skulked.
Exclaim,	exclaiming,	exclaimed,	having exclaimed.
Domineer,	domineering,	domineered,	having domineered.

## Transitive verbs and their participles.

Verb.	Pres. part.	Perf. part.	Prior perf. part.
Heed,	heeding,	heeded,	having heeded.
Love,	loving,	loved,	having loved.
Bake,	baking,	baked,	having baked.
Read,	reading,	read,	having read.

## Passive verbs and their participles.

Verb.	Pres. part.	Perf. part.	Prior perf. part.
Am heeded,	being heeded,	heeded,	having been heeded.
Am loved,	being loved,	loved,	having been loved.
Is baked,	being baked,	baked,	having been baked.
Is read,	being read,	read,	having been read.

## THE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATES.

A PARTICIPIAL PREDICATE is a single participle, or an association of words in which a participle is an essential element.

## CLASSIFICATION OF PARTICIPIAL PREDICATES.

The participial predicates are divided into intransitive, transitive, passive, intransitive post-adjective, intransitive post-substantive, passive post-adjective, and passive post-substantive.

## FORMATION OF THE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATES.

The participial predicates are formed from the predications by dropping the nominative case, and changing the verb to a participle; as,

## PREDICATIONS.

Intransitive predication.

The invalid walked.

The debtor has absconded.

Transitive predication.

These Indians catch beaver.

The society built a church.

Passive predication.

He is suspected.

The pupils were instructed.

A wolf has been seen.

Intransitive post-adjective predication.

I am cautious.

The boys were studious.

Intransitive post-substantive predication.

He was a gardener.

He became a great man.

Passive post-adjective predication.

The notes are thought good.

He was accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive predication.

He was made a judge.

He will be chosen president.

## PARTICIPIAL PREDICATES.

Intransitive participial predicate.

Walking.

Having absconded.

Transitive participial predicate.

Catching beaver.

Having built a church.

Passive participial predicate.

Being suspected.

Instructed.

Having been seen.

Intransitive post-adjective participial predicate.

Being cautious.

Having been studious.

Intransitive post-substantive participial predicate.

Being a gardener.

Having become a great man.

Passive post-substantive participial predicate.

Being thought good.

Accounted worthy.

Passive post-adjective participial predicate.

Being made a judge.

Having been chosen president.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Participles belong to nouns and pronouns.

Transitive participles govern the objective case.

The participles of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

## THE INTRANSITIVE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATE.

The essential etymological element of the intransitive participial predicate, is an intransitive participle.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

## Present participle.

The lads found the horses peaceably grazing.  
 I have often seen the gentleman walking.  
 The militia advancing, met the Indians retreating.  
 Here is a workman sleeping soundly.  
 There is a plant blossoming beautifully.  
 A king ruling prudently, may be popular.  
 The landlord blustering pompously, entered the room.

## Prior perfect participle.

Having been there, he knew the condition of things.  
 Having dined, the gentleman pursued his journey.  
 The lady having been to church, is very serious.  
 The invalid having walked too far, retired early.  
 Having spoken too long, the orator was much fatigued.  
 The patient having rested well, felt much better.  
 The Indians having retreated to a wood, awaited our approach.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The lads found the horses peaceably grazing.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Peaceably* is an adverb, and qualifies *grazing*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify participles.

*Grazing* is a present participle, intransitive, and belongs to horses. Rule.—Participles belong to nouns.

## Logical synthesis.

*The lads found the horses*—Transitive predication.

*Peaceably grazing*.—Intransitive participial predicate.

*Having been there*—Intransitive participial predicate.

*He knew the condition*—Transitive predication.

*Of things*—Prepositional phrase.



## THE TRANSITIVE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the transitive participial predicate, are a transitive participle and an objective case.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

## Present participle.

We saw some people catching fish.

The planter caught a servant purloining bacon.

The gentleman found his son prosecuting his studies.

The hen seeing a hawk, apprehends danger.

The aged sailor viewing a ship, recalls former scenes.

A youth avoiding evil associates, may escape vice.

We left the club discussing the question.

## Prior perfect participle.

The patient having learned his condition, submitted to his fate with becoming fortitude.

This man having stifled his convictions, returned to his former vices.

Charles having mortgaged his estate, engaged in uncertain speculations.

The apostles having preached the gospel to the Jews, turned to the Gentiles.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*We saw some people catching fish.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Catching* is a present participle, transitive, and belongs to *people*. Rule.—Participles belong to nouns.

*Fish* is a common noun, neuter gender, plural number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *catching*. Rule.—Transitive participles govern the objective case.

## Logical synthesis.

*We saw some people*—Transitive predication.

*Catching fish*—Transitive participial predicate.



## THE PASSIVE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATE.

The essential etymological element of the passive participial predicate, is a passive participle.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

## Present participle.

The stranger being suspected, was arrested.

A fish being securely hooked, may be pulled out of the water.

The officer being reproached with cowardice, could not brook the insult.

The student being too much engaged in study, does not take sufficient exercise.

The people being engrossed by party politics, do not study the science of politics.

## Perfect participle.

The old gentleman wronged out of his property, was suddenly reduced from affluence to poverty.

Wronged out of his property, the old gentleman was suddenly reduced from affluence to poverty.

A ship navigated by skilful seamen, will probably reach her destination.

A crime mitigated by such circumstances, should be visited with a moderate punishment.

The people deceived by fair promises, voted for the candidates proposed by the party.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The stranger being suspected, was arrested.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Being suspected* is a present participle, passive, and belongs to *stranger*. Rule.—Participles belong to nouns.

Logical synthesis.

*The stranger was arrested*—Passive predication.

*Being suspected*—Passive participial predicate.

## Prior perfect participle.

The subject having been ably discussed, was decided on its merits.

Moneys having been appropriated by Congress, can be drawn from the treasury.

The deed having been executed, was handed to its proper owner.

The little army having been enticed into an ambush, was suddenly attacked by a large body of Indians.

THE INTRANSITIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PARTICIPIAL  
PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-adjective participial predicate, are an intransitive participle and an adjective.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

## The present participle.

The traveler being hungry, called at an inn for dinner.

Being very poor, he gains a livelihood by daily labor.

The stranger being angry, acted improperly.

Being industrious, he will soon acquire a competency.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The traveler being hungry, called at an inn for dinner.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Being* is a present participle, intransitive, and belongs to traveler. Rule.—Participles belong to nouns.

*Hungry* is an adjective, and belongs to *traveler*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

## Logical synthesis.

*The traveler called*—Intransitive predication.

*Being hungry*—Intransitive post-adjective participial predicate.

*At an inn*—Prepositional phrase.

*For dinner*—Prepositional phrase.

The young man being conceited, overrated his own talents.

Being beautiful, she may become presumptuous.

Being obnoxious to the government, he left the country.

The pupil being idle, will not improve.

The prior perfect participle.

The contractor having been sick for some time, did not fulfil his engagements.

The young man having been idle in college, left it with a poor education.

Having been benevolent in prosperity, the gentleman was pitied in adversity.

Having been frugal, he left his family in comfortable circumstances.

The parents having been improvident, left their children destitute.

The officer having been cowardly in battle, was cashiered.

The preacher having been zealous, left the station in a prosperous condition.

The teacher having been faithful to his pupils, was unpopular with the parents.

#### THE INTRANSITIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-substantive participial predicate, are an intransitive participle and a nominative case after.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The present participle.

Being a correct writer, he did not fear criticism.

Being a good mechanic, he can find employment.

Being a skilful physician, he understood the disease.

The horse being a vicious animal, threw his rider.

This clergyman being an eloquent speaker, always commands a large audience.

Being a rich man, he might give liberally.

This farmer being a thrifty manager, will gain a competency.

The captain being a skilful navigator, knew the exact position of his vessel.

### The prior perfect participle.

This divine having been a faithful Christian, did not fear death.

Having long been a member of Congress, he understands parliamentary usage.

Having been a public officer for many years, he is unfit for ordinary business.

Having been an invalid, she cannot expect a speedy recovery.

Having been a politician for many years, he is well versed in party chicanery.

Having been a bad youth, he could never gain the confidence of the people.

### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Being a correct writer, he did not fear criticism.*

#### Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Being* is a present participle, intransitive, and belongs to *he*. Rule.—Participles belong to pronouns.

*Writer* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *being*. Rule.—The participles of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Being a correct writer*—Intransitive post-substantive participial predicate.

*He did not fear criticism*—Transitive predication.

*This divine did not fear death*—Transitive predication.

*Having been a faithful Christian*—Intransitive post-substantive participial predicate.

## THE PASSIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-adjective participial predicate, are a passive participle and an adjective.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The goods being regarded cheap, can be sold without difficulty.

The project being accounted feasible, may be undertaken with spirit.

The teacher being considered partial to certain pupils, is unpopular with the rest of the school.

A condition deemed so unreasonable by impartial umpires, can not be insisted on by a reasonable man.

The contract having been pronounced fraudulent, was annulled by the court.

Having been born rich, the young man does not know the value of money.

Having been made sick already by too much exertion, he relinquished the proposed journey.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The goods being regarded cheap, were sold without difficulty.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Being regarded* is a present participle, passive, and belongs to *goods*. Rule.—Participles belong to nouns.

*Cheap* is an adjective, and belongs to *goods*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns.

## Logical synthesis.

*The goods were sold*—Passive predication.

*Being regarded cheap*—Passive post-adjective participial predicate.

*Without difficulty*—Prepositional phrase.

## THE PASSIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-substantive participial predicate, are a passive participle and a nominative case after.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

These mechanics being called good workmen, are well sustained in their business.

The young lady being considered an able teacher, has been engaged by the trustees.

Our senator being accounted an interesting debater, always commands attention.

The note being regarded a counterfeit, was not received by the bank.

Our candidate elected vice-president, may succeed to the presidency.

Having been born a lord, he has become a legislator without the formalities of an election.

This politician having been elected vice-president, aspires to the presidency.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*These mechanics being called good workmen, are well sustained in their business.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Being called* is a present participle, passive, and belongs to *mechanics*. Rule.—Participles belong to nouns.

*Workmen* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, and nominative case after *being called*. Rule.—The participles of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them retain the latter.

Logical synthesis.

*These mechanics are well sustained*—Passive predication.

*Being called good workmen*—Passive post-substantive participial predicate.

*In their business*—Prepositional phrase.



## THE INTERJECTION.

An INTERJECTION is a word used without syntactical connection with other words, to express sudden passion or emotion.

## LIST OF THE INTERJECTIONS.

1. Of joy ; eigh ! hey ! io !
2. Of sorrow ; oh ! ah ! alas ! alack ! hoo ! welladay !
3. Of wonder ; heigh ! ha ! indeed ! whew ! egad !
4. Of wishing or earnestness ; O !
5. Of pain or fear ; oh ! O dear ! ah ! eh !
6. Of contempt ; fudge ! pugh ! poh ! pshaw ! pish ! tush !  
tut ! hump !
7. Of aversion ; foh ! faugh ! fie ! fy ! whew !
8. Of calling aloud ; ho ! soho ! hollo ! halloo ! hoy ! ahoy !
9. Of exultation ; ah ! aha ! huzza ! hurrah ! hey ! heyday !
10. Of laughter ; ha, ha, ha ! he, he, he !
11. Of salutation ; hail ! all-hail !
12. Of calling to attention ; ho ! lo ! la ! law !
13. Of commanding to silence ; hush ! hist ! whist !
14. Of surprise or horror ; oh ! ha ! hah !
15. Of languor ; heigh-ho !
16. Of stopping ; avast ! whoh !
17. Of knowing or detecting ; oho ! ahah ! ay-ay !
18. Of interrogation ; eh ? ha ? hay ?

Words belonging to other parts of speech are sometimes uttered after the manner of interjections ; but the expressions are, in most cases, elliptical, and can be disposed of in solution, without resorting to this part of speech.

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

Interjections are independent of other words in construction.

## OBSERVATIONS.

Interjections are used to express sudden impulse of feeling. They are, therefore, not used in unimpassioned writings. They should be sparingly employed even in conversation, as their frequent use indicates thoughtlessness, and paucity of language.



## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Eigh! you are here in good time.

Hey! haste to the wedding.

Ah! how low have we fallen!

"I have been occupied, alas! with trifles."

"Ah, no! Achilles meets a shameful fate,

Oh! how unworthy of the brave and great."

Heigh! how came you here so early?

Whew! how the wind whistles!

Egad! I am in a sad predicament.

Oh! I have done mischief.

O dear! how sick I feel!

Poh! how can you entertain such an opinion!

Pshaw! I will hear no fulsome flattery.

Foh! I do not believe a word of it.

Soho! come to breakfast.

Hush! the least noise may betray us.

Ah! we shall soon have you.

Ay-ay! the dog will be after you.

Oh! I meant no harm.

Heigh-ho! how slowly the day passes!

Oho! I see. I understand it.

"O for a glance of heavenly day!"

Alas for Hungary! Hurrah for Jackson!

Ah me! I have come too late.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Eigh! you are here in good time.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Eigh* is an interjection expressing joy, and is used independently. Rule.—Interjections are independent of other words in construction.

Logical synthesis.

*Eigh*—Interjection.

*You are here*—Intransitive predication.

*In good time*—Prepositional phrase.

## THE INDEPENDENT CASE.

The *independent case* denotes that the noun or the pronoun is free from constructive dependence.

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

When a noun or a pronoun is free from constructive dependence, it is in the independent case.

A noun or a pronoun is in the independent case,

1. When used in direct address; as,

Charles, you should retire early.

Where are your garden implements, my son?

Daughter, have you been studious to-day?

Brother, father has purchased a fine horse.

Mr. Editor, has any late news been received?

He speaks to thee, O man!

"He will deliver us out of thy hand, O king."

Eigh! have you come, my boy?

Alas! my brother, must you leave us?

Forbid it, O father of mercy!

Ho! John, come to dinner.

Indeed! Susan, do you believe these absurd stories?

Ship, ahoy! Land, ho!

Oh! I did not know you, Jane.

O ye of little faith! O Jerusalem! Jerusalem!

"Arise, O Lord; O God, lift up thy hand."

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Charles, you should retire early.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Charles* is a proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, second person, and independent case. Rule.—When a noun or a pronoun is free from constructive dependence, it is in the independent case.

Logical analysis.

*Charles*—Independent case.

*You should retire early*—Intransitive predication.

2. When used in simple exclamation; as,

O shameful treatment! O happy we!

Oh! the intolerably hard times!

Ah! the excruciating pain!

Alas! the poor Indian!

"Alas! alas! that great city."

3. When introduced abruptly and emphatically by a figure of speech called *pleonasm*; as,

Our fathers, where are they?

The prophets, do they live forever?

My friends, they have deserted me.

The clergy, may they be holy men.

The sword, may it become a ploughshare.

4. When used independently with a participial predicate; as,

The officers having fallen, the soldiers gave way.

The shepherd played for some time on his pipe, his flock in the mean while feeding about him.

The company having dined, the ladies withdrew.

A learned jurist being there at the time, the case in dispute was left to his decision.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The officers having fallen, the soldiers gave way.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Officers* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, and independent case. Rule.—When a noun or a pronoun is free from constructive dependence, it is in the independent case.

*Having fallen* is a prior perfect participle, intransitive, and belongs to officers. Rule.—Participles belong to nouns.

Logical synthesis.

*The officers*—Independent case.

*Having fallen*—Intransitive participial predicate.

*The soldiers gave way*—Transitive predication.

The captain seeing a storm approaching, all hands were called to their posts.

This farmer's fodder will fail before spring, he having too much stock.

The ship having sprung a leak, the captain made for the nearest port.

The old gentleman having finished the kite, the boys were greatly delighted.

The payment having been pledged by competent security, the money may be expected at the maturity of the bond.

The letter having been intercepted, the whole plot transpired.

The estate having been sold under a mortgage, the family were suddenly thrown on their personal resources.

The dog being rabid, his owner shot him.

The horse being restive, the lady would not ride him.

The young man having been sick for a long time, his friends despair of his recovery.

The candidate having become unpopular, the people withheld their support.

The traveler being urgent for dinner, the landlady hurried the cook.

That clergyman being a good preacher, his congregation pay their subscriptions cheerfully.

Authors being generally necessitous persons, publishers frequently obtain their productions for a small pittance.

This philanthropist having been a warm friend to sailors, they regret his death.

This politician having become a violent partisan, good men of all parties lost their respect for him.

The farm was sold without difficulty, the soil being accounted excellent in quality.

The prince having been crown'd emperor, the nation meekly submitted to his authority.

## APPOSITION.

APPOSITION is the relation of a noun or a pronoun, added to an other noun or pronoun by way of explanation or emphasis.

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

A noun or a pronoun added to an other noun or pronoun by way of explanation or emphasis, is in the same case by apposition.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Adam, the first man, committed the original sin.

Eve, the first woman, must have been exceedingly beautiful.

Abraham, the Patriarch, is called the father of the faithful.

Moses, the Jewish lawgiver, was a meek man.

David the Psalmist, was king of Israel.

The prophet Elijah was translated.

John the Baptist, was the harbinger of Christ.

Peter, the hermit, preached the first crusade.

Paul the Apostle was a native of Tarsus, a city of Cilicia.

Luther, the reformer, was a monk of the order of St. Augustine.

Cato, the censor, was a strict supervisor of morals.

“Hope, the star of life, never sets.”

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Adam, the first man, committed the original sin.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Man* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case, and is in apposition with *Adam*.

Rule.—A noun or a pronoun, added to an other noun or pronoun by way of explanation or emphasis, is in the same case by apposition.

Logical synthesis.

*Adam committed the original sin*—Transitive predication.

*The first man*—Apposition.

"I John saw these things."

"I Paul myself beseech you."

"I, thy father-in-law Jethro, have come unto thee."

"And Ezra, the scribe, stood upon a pulpit of wood."

Edward took care of the stock himself.

This was the opinion of Daniel Webster, the American statesman.

"Hail! Columbia, happy land!"

It is all a dream, an empty dream.

"His praise, ye brooks, attune."

"They have forsaken me, the fountain of living waters."

The ship Nancy foundered at sea.

King Solomon was a wise man.

Lake Superior is a vast body of clear water.

"I, even I only, am left."

"O my son Absalom! O Absalom, my son, my son!"

"Go ye, every man unto his city."

"They reap vanity, every one with his neighbor."

"We have turned every one to his own way."

"Little children, love one another."

### Logical synthesis.

*It is all a dream*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.

*All*—Apposition. *An empty dream*—Apposition.

*His praise attune*—Transitive predication. *Ye*—Independent case. *Brooks*—Apposition.

*The ship Nancy foundered*—Intransitive predication. *Nancy*—Apposition.

*King Solomon was a wise man*—Intransitive post-substantive predication. *Solomon*—Apposition.

*Lake Superior is a vast body*—Intransitive post-substantive predication. *Superior*—Apposition.

Obs.—In the three last examples, the noun in the nominative case to the verb, and the noun in apposition, are read together on account of their intimate connection. In such cases either noun may be taken as the principal or leading term.



"Be ye helpers one of an other."

"Ye are one an other's joy."

They love each other ardently.

In this matter we have all been at fault.

I will examine the book page by page.

They named the child John.

"Give me here John the baptist's head."

For David, my servant's sake.

Paul the Apostle's advice.

For Herodias' sake his brother Philip's wife.

For the sake of Herodias, the wife of Philip his brother.

*Go ye*—Intransitive predication. *Every man*—Apposition.

*Little children*—Independent case. *Love one an other*—

Transitive predication. *One*—Apposition with *ye* understood.

*Be ye helpers*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.

*One*—Apposition with *ye*.

*Ye are one an other's joy*—Intransitive post-substantive predication. *One*—Apposition with *ye*.

*They love each other ardently*—Transitive predication.

*Each*—Apposition with *they*.

*In this matter*—*At fault*—Prepositional phrases. *We have*

*all been*—Intransitive predication. *All*—Apposition with *we*.

*I will examine the book*—Transitive predication. *Page*—

Apposition with *book*.

*They named the child*—Transitive predication. *John*—Apposition.

*Give John the baptist's head*—Transitive predication. *Me*—Prepositional phrase, *to* being understood. *The baptist's*—Apposition with *John*, which is in the possessive case without the usual form.

In the next line, *David* is in the possessive case.

*For Herodias' sake*—Prepositional phrase. *His brother Philip's wife*—Apposition. *Wife*, without the usual form of the possessive case, is in apposition with *Herodias'*; and *brother* is in apposition with *Philip*.



## THE GERUNDIVE.

A GERUNDIVE is a word that partakes of the nature of a verb and a noun.

Gerundives are derived from verbs. Each complete verb supplies two gerundives; viz., the *present* and the *prior perfect*.

## Intransitive verbs and their gerundives.

Verb.	Pres. gerundive.	Prior perf. gerundive.
Go,	going,	having gone.
Skulk,	skulking,	having skulked.
Exclaim,	exclaiming,	having exclaimed.
Domineer,	domineering,	having domineered.

## Transitive verbs and their gerundives.

Verb.	Pres. gerundive.	Prior perf. gerundive.
Heed,	heeding,	having heeded.
Love,	loving,	having loved.
Bake,	baking,	having baked.
Read,	reading,	having read.

## Passive verbs and their gerundives.

Verb.	Pres. gerundive.	Prior perf. gerundive.
Am heeded,	being heeded,	having been heeded.
Am loved,	being loved,	having been loved.
Is baked,	being baked,	having been baked.
Is read,	being read,	having been read.

## THE GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

A GERUNDIVE PREDICATE is a single gerundive, or an association of words in which a gerundive is an essential element.

## CLASSIFICATION OF GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

The gerundive predicates are divided into intransitive, transitive, passive, intransitive post-adjective, intransitive post-substantive, passive post-adjective, and passive post-substantive.

## FORMATION OF THE GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

The gerundive predicates are formed from the predications by dropping the nominative case, and changing the verb to a gerundive ; as,

## PREDICATIONS.

Intransitive predication.

The invalid walked.

The debtor has absconded.

Transitive predication.

These Indians catch beaver.

The society built a church.

Passive predication.

He is suspected.

A wolf has been seen.

Intransitive post-adjective predication.

I am cautious.

The boys were studious.

Intransitive post-substantive predication.

He was a gardener.

He became a great man.

Passive post-adjective predication.

The notes are thought good.

He was accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive predication.

He was made a judge.

He will be chosen president.

## GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

Intransitive gerundive predicate.

Walking.

Having absconded.

Transitive gerundive predicate.

Catching beaver.

Having built a church.

Passive gerundive predicate.

Being suspected.

Having been seen.

Intransitive post-adjective gerundive predicate.

Being cautious.

Having been studious.

Intransitive post-substantive gerundive predicate.

Being a gardener.

Having become a great man.

Passive post-adjective gerundive predicate.

Being thought good.

Being accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive gerundive predicate.

Being made a judge.

Having been chosen president.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Articles belong to gerundives.

Adjectives belong to gerundives.

Adjective pronouns belong to gerundives.

Adverbs qualify gerundives.

Transitive gerundives govern the objective case.

The gerundives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

## THE INTRANSITIVE GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological element of the intransitive gerundive predicate, is an in intransitive gerundive.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Walking is a healthful exercise.  
 Sleeping too much is injurious to health.  
 Eating immoderately is imprudent.  
 His coming was announced in the papers.  
 Swearing to facts in a court of justice is not profane swearing.  
 The mixing of so many ingredients makes a jumble.  
 The preaching of a hypocrite is an abomination.  
 His running away was a strong proof of guilt.  
 Good financiering is necessary in business.  
 Fishing is the chief employment of the inhabitants.  
 Bathing in cool water is agreeable in warm weather.  
 Riding in a carriage is pleasing to children.  
 Ploughing in stony ground is hard work.  
 Going to the falls would consume too much time.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Walking is a healthful exercise.*  
*Sleeping too much is injurious to health.*  
*The law of God forbids lying.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Walking* is a present gerundive, intransitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *is*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Much* is an abverb, and qualifies *sleeping*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify gerundives.

*Lying* is a present gerundive, intransitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *forbids*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

The law of God forbids lying.

The physician may recommend blistering.

The rules of the school forbid whispering.

The young man denied having been in bad company.

Talking of one's own abilities is commonly evidence of conceitedness.

Lounging in places of public resort is ruinous to a man's reputation.

Boasting of great physical strength is proof of intellectual weakness.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Walking*—Intransitive gerundive predicate.

*Walking is a healthful exercise*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.

*Sleeping too much*—Intransitive gerundive predicate.

*Sleeping too much is injurious*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*To health*—Prepositional phrase.

*The law forbids lying*—Transitive predication.

*Of God*—Prepositional phrase.

*Lying*—Intransitive gerundive predicate.

#### THE TRANSITIVE GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the transitive gerundive predicate, are a transitive gerundive and an objective case.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Turning a grindstone is uninteresting work.

The army regretted losing their best officers.

Cutting wood is an invigorating labor.

Teaching idle children is irksome business.

The trustees recommended chastising refractory pupils.

Catching beaver is the employment of some savages in the winter.

There is no withstanding such entreaties.

Cramming students for public examination, is a common practice in popular schools.

Writing examples in imitation of correct models, is an improving exercise.

Reading instructive books should occupy a due proportion of our time.

Dressing dolls is a pleasing amusement for little girls.

His having relieved many persons in distress, was a source of much satisfaction to him in his old age.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Turning a grindstone is uninteresting work.*

*The army regretted losing their best officers.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Turning* is a present gerundive, transitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *is*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Grindstone* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *turning*. Rule.—Transitive gerundives govern the objective case.

*Losing* is a present gerundive, transitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *regretted*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

*Officers* is a common noun, masculine gender, plural number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *losing*. Rule.—Transitive gerundives govern the objective case.

#### Logical analysis.

*Turning a grindstone*—Transitive gerundive predicate.

*Turning a grindstone is uninteresting work*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.

*The army regretted losing their best officers*—Transitive predication.

*Losing their best officers*—Transitive gerundive predicate.

## THE PASSIVE GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological element of the passive gerundive predicate, is a passive gerundive.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The former viciousness of that man caused his being suspected of this crime.

Our being habituated to wealthy circumstances renders poverty more annoying.

We cannot avoid being distressed at the misfortunes of our friends.

His being well known in the Atlantic cities was a ready introduction to business in the western states.

The cunningly devised story of the boys did not prevent their being punished with just severity.

His being traduced by political enemies is a matter of course.

The youth regrets having been seen in bad company.

The lads barely escaped being drowned.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The former viciousness of that man caused his being suspected of this crime.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*His* is a personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, and is governed by *being suspected*. Rule.—Gerundives govern the possessive case.

*Being suspected* is a present gerundive, passive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *caused*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

Logical analysis.

*The former viciousness caused his being suspected*—Transitive predication.

*His being suspected*—Passive gerundive predicate.

*Of that man—Of this crime*—Prepositional phrases.



## THE INTRANSITIVE POST-ADJECTIVE GERUNDIVE

## PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-adjective gerundive predicate, are an intransitive gerundive and an adjective.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

His being idle in summer has brought a winter of poverty.

We regret his becoming so impatient.

That enterprising student anticipates being learned.

The being unhappy in confinement is not surprising.

His being sick was injurious to his business.

My being cautious has often saved my life.

We should avoid becoming miserly.

Their having been free renders their present subjection more galling.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*His being idle in summer has brought a winter of poverty.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*His* is a personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, and is governed by *being*. Rule.—Gerundives govern the possessive case.

*Being* is a present gerundive, intransitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *has brought*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Idle* is a common adjective, and belongs to *being*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to gerundives.

## Logical synthesis.

*His being idle*—Intransitive post-adjective gerundive predicate.

*His being idle has brought a winter*—Transitive predication.

*In summer*—*Of poverty*—Prepositional phrases.



THE INTRANSITIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE GERUNDIVE  
PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-substantive gerundive predicate, are an intransitive gerundive and a nominative case after.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This youth anticipates becoming a soldier.

The stranger did not deny being a Christian.

My friends did not favor my becoming an author.

His becoming a governor had not been expected by his friends.

His being a rich man's son was the cause of his unjust acquittal by the jury.

Their being thorough scholars has been proved by a rigid examination.

We do not doubt his having been a soldier.

His having been a sailor is known from his sea-phrases.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*This youth anticipates becoming a soldier.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Becoming* is present gerundive, intransitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *anticipates*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

*Soldier* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *becoming*. Rule.—The gerundives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

## Logical synthesis.

*This youth anticipates becoming a soldier*—Transitive predication.

*Becoming a soldier*—Intransitive post-substantive gerundive predicate.

## THE PASSIVE POST-ADJECTIVE GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-adjective gerundive predicate, are a passive gerundive and an adjective.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

His being made sick by hard labor is evident.

The youth regretted being accounted idle.

Our being regarded poor is no great calamity, even in this money-getting age.

Its being thought cheap caused a ready sale of it for cash in hand.

His being considered talented by the professors, arose from his indomitable perseverance in study.

My being made good for the loss of my ship, will depend upon the favorable decision of the court.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*His being made sick by hard labor is evident.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Being made* is a present gerundive, passive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *is*.  
Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

*Sick* is a common adjective, and belongs to *being made*.  
Rule.—Adjectives belong to gerundives.

*Evident* is a common adjective, and belongs to *being made*.  
Rule.—Adjectives belong to gerundives.

## Logical synthesis.

*His being made sick*—Passive post-adjective gerundive predicate.

*His being made sick is evident*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*By hard labor*—Prepositional phrase.

## THE PASSIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-substantive gerundive predicate, are a passive gerundive and a nominative case after.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

His being chosen a judge was surprising to his former friends.

His being elected vice-president may secure to him the presidency.

His being accounted an expert surgeon secured to him a lucrative appointment in the army.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*His being chosen a judge was surprising to his former friends.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Judge* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *being chosen*. Rule.—The gerundives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

Logical synthesis.

*His being chosen a judge*—Passive post-substantive gerundive predicate.

*His being chosen a judge was surprising*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*To his former friends*—Prepositional phrase.

## THE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

A PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATE is an association of words, in which a preposition and a gerundive are essential elements.

## CLASSIFICATION OF THE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE

## PREDICATES.

The prepositional gerundive predicates are divided into intransitive, transitive, passive, intransitive post-adjective, intransitive post-substantive, passive post-adjective, and passive post-substantive.

## FORMATION OF THE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

The prepositional gerundive predicates are formed from the predications by dropping the nominative case, changing the verb to the gerundive, and prefixing a preposition.

## PREDICATIONS.

Intransitive predication.

The invalid walked.

The debtor has absconded.

Transitive predication.

These Indians hunt beaver.

The society built a church.

Passive predication.

He is suspected.

A wolf has been seen.

Intransitive post-adjective predication.

I am cautious.

The boys were studious.

Intransitive post-substantive predication.

He was a gardener.

He became a great man.

Passive post-adjective predication.

The notes are thought good.

He was accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive predication.

He was made a judge.

He will be chosen president.

## PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

Intransitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

By walking.

By absconding.

Transitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

In hunting beaver.

Without having built a church.

Passive prepositional gerundive predicate.

Above being suspected.

At having been seen.

Intrans. post-adjective prep. gerundive predicate.

By being cautious.

For having been studious.

Intrans. post-substantive prep. gerundive predicate.

Against being a gardener.

At having become a great man.

Passive post-adjective prep. gerundive predicate.

By being thought good.

Of being accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive prep. gerundive predicate.

To being made a judge.

By having been chosen president.

## THE INTRANSITIVE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive prepositional gerundive predicate, are a preposition and an intransitive gerundive.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This monk is earnestly engaged in reading.

We should ever be temperate in eating.

We should be candid in judging of the conduct of others.

Grammatical accuracy is essential to good speaking.

Your mother will be alarmed at our staying away so long.

My father cautioned me against confiding too much in strangers.

My brother is delighted with wandering in the fields.

Our minister will chide us for not having come to church.

You will be sorry for not having attended more diligently to your studies.

Our pastor is celebrated for speaking in a sympathetic style.

The unfortunate debtor avoided arrest by absconding.

The company were fatigued by walking too far.

The American people venerate the patriots of the revolution for having contended valiantly for liberty.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*This monk is earnestly engaged in reading.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*In* is a preposition, and connects the prepositional gerundive predicate *In reading*, to *is engaged*. Rule.—Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

*Reading* is a present gerundive, intransitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *in*. Rule.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

Logical synthesis.

*This monk is earnestly engaged*—Passive predication.

*In reading*—Intransitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

## THE TRANSITIVE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the transitive prepositional gerundive predicate, are a preposition, a transitive gerundive, and a noun or a pronoun in the objective case.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The traveler rewarded the lad for watering his horse.

The boys were punished for robbing a bird's nest.

This mechanic invented a machine for planing boards.

Men are honored for having performed noble deeds for the benefit of their species.

The senator commended the secretary for having managed his department with distinguished ability.

The jury is censurable for not having decided the case according to fact.

My time is chiefly occupied in composing a history of my native county.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The traveler rewarded the lad for watering his horse.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*For* is a preposition, and connects the prepositional gerundive predicate *For watering his horse*, to *rewarded*. Rule.—Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

*Watering* is a present gerundive, transitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *for*. Rule.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

*Horse* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *watering*. Rule.—Transitive gerundives govern the objective case.

## Logical synthesis.

*The traveler rewarded the lad*—Transitive predication.

*For watering his horse*—Transitive prepositional gerundive predicate.



Slanderos persons delight in traducing their neighbors.

This farmer is punctual in fulfilling his contracts.

The landlord was rigid in exacting payment to the last farthing.

The pupils are all engaged in hearing a lecture from a distinguished professor.

This writer is very exact in constructing his sentences.

Much has been written on educating the rising generation.

William's restoration to my favor depends on his making reparation for past injustice.

Aged persons are pleased with reviewing former scenes.

Few persons are capable of acquiring a complete education.

The art of staining glass is now practiced with success.

My friend Watson entertains some thoughts of publishing an English grammar.

The state secured prosperity by establishing judicious laws.

The society has done something towards building a church.

The lady devotes much time to doing good.

These savages spend the winter in hunting beaver.

#### THE PASSIVE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive prepositional gerundive predicate, are a preposition and a passive gerundive.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Vain persons are fond of being flattered.

The lady weeps at the thought of being separated from her family.

A man may be justly suspected of dishonesty, on account of his being associated with dishonest men.

This generous woman was not ashamed of being found relieving human woe.

My father journeyed pleasantly on account of having been known to many of his fellow travelers.



Some animals are pleased with being caressed.

The boys gained access to the garden without being discovered by the owner.

The emperor traveled through his dominions without being recognized by any of his subjects.

We arrived at our place of destination without having been delayed by accident.

The people met without having been especially called by the committee.

The honest fellow was amazed at being charged with crime.

The young man, upon being introduced, will be cordially received.

Much depends on the rule's being observed.

The cold weather did not prevent the excursion from being enjoyed.

In the opinion of some persons, there is great dignity in being waited for.

The character of this man is above being suspected.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Vain persons are fond of being flattered.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Of* is a preposition, and connects the prepositional gerundive predicate *Of being flattered*, to *fond*. Rule.—Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

*Being flattered* is a present gerundive, passive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *of*. Rule.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Vain persons are fond*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*Of being flattered*—Passive prepositional gerundive predicate.

THE INTRANSITIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PREPOSITIONAL  
GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-adjective prepositional gerundive predicate, are a preposition, an intransitive gerundive, and an adjective.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Being rich is no good reason for being impudent.

Rich men are seldom neglected for having been poor.

The students were commended for having been studious.

This individual took delight in being odd.

In growing fat the animal will improve in beauty.

These merchants should be above being dishonorable.

Many men would prefer death to being false.

We pity this man on account of his being blind.

An honest man is conscious of being just.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Being rich is no good reason for being impudent.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*For* is a preposition, and connects the prepositional gerundive predicate *For being impudent*, to *reason*. Rule.—Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

*Being* is a present gerundive, intransitive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *for*. Rule.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

*Impudent* is a common adjective, and belongs to *being*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to gerundives.

Logical synthesis.

*Being rich*—Intransitive post-adjective gerundive predicate.

*Being rich is no good reason*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.

*For being impudent*—Intransitive post-adjective prepositional gerundive predicate.

There is no doubt of its being lawful.  
 Being witty out of season is one way of being foolish.  
 They were displeased on account of our being so formal.  
 Many things are opposed on account of their being new.  
 Its being new is nothing against its being valuable.  
 I see nothing against the note's being genuine.  
 We wonder at his being so unkind to his family.  
 My father rejoiced at having become pious in early life.

THE INTRANSITIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PREPOSITIONAL  
 GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-substantive prepositional gerundive predicate, are a preposition, an intransitive gerundive, and a nominative case after.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The young man recoiled from becoming a missionary.  
 Charles is deterred by diffidence from becoming a physician.  
 My son is delighted with the prospect of becoming a farmer.  
 This banker has not yet despaired of becoming a rich man.  
 I have some doubt of that politician's being an honest man.  
 The apostles showed their sincerity by dying martyrs.  
 The lad was pleased with being monitor.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The young man recoiled from becoming a missionary.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Missionary* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *becoming*.  
 Rule.—The gerundives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

Logical synthesis.

*The young man recoiled*—Intransitive predication.

*From becoming a missionary*—Intransitive post-substantive prepositional gerundive predicate.

The general charged the prisoner with being a spy.

This captain was cashiered for being a coward.

The gentleman will be pleased at his son's becoming the chum of this clever rustic.

#### THE PASSIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-adjective prepositional gerundive predicate, are a preposition, a passive gerundive, and an adjective.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The goods were easily sold on account of their being regarded cheap.

The contract was annulled by being pronounced fraudulent.

I have some doubt of his having been called generous.

We pity this lad for having been born blind.

I do not doubt the fact of his being thought strictly honest.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The goods were easily sold on account of their being regarded cheap.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Of* is a preposition, and connects the phrase '*of their being regarded cheap*,' to *account*. Rule.—Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

*Being regarded* is a present gerundive, passive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *of*. Rule.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

*Cheap* is an adjective, and belongs to *being regarded*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to gerundives.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The goods were easily sold*—Passive predication.

*Of their being regarded cheap*—Passive post-adjective prepositional gerundive predicate.

THE PASSIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PREPOSITIONAL  
GERUNDIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-substantive prepositional gerundive predicate, are a preposition, a passive gerundive, and a nominative case after.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This politician offers no objections to being made a judge of the supreme court.

The ambition of the tyrant has been gratified by being crowned emperor.

She was prevented from relying on her personal resources by being born an heiress.

By having been chosen president he became the leader of a powerful party.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*This politician offers no objections to being made a judge of the supreme court.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*To* is a preposition, and connects the prepositional gerundive predicate *To being made a judge*, to *offers*. Rule.—Prepositions connect prepositional structures to words on which they depend.

*Being made* is a present gerundive, passive, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *to*. Rule.—Prepositions govern the objective case.

*Judge* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *being made*. Rule.—The gerundives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

Logical synthesis.

*This politician offers no objections*—Transitive predication.

*To being made a judge*—Passive post-substantive prepositional gerundive predicate.

## THE VERB IN THE INFINITIVE MODE.

Each complete verb supplies two forms in the infinitive mode ; viz., the *present* and the *present perfect* ; as,

## Intransitive verbs.

## Indicative mode.

## Infinitive mode.

Present tense.	Present tense.	Present perfect tense.
Go,	to go,	to have gone.
Skulk,	to skulk,	to have skulked.
Exclaim,	to exclaim,	to have exclaimed.
Domineer,	to domineer,	to have domineered.

## Transitive verbs.

Heed,	to heed,	to have heeded.
Love,	to love,	to have loved.
Bake,	to bake,	to have baked.
Read,	to read,	to have read.

## Passive verbs.

Am heeded,	to be heeded,	to have been heeded.
Am loved,	to be loved,	to have been loved.
Is baked,	to be baked,	to have been baked.
Is read,	to be read,	to have been read.

## THE INFINITIVE PREDICATES.

AN INFINITIVE PREDICATE is a single verb in the infinitive mode, or an association of words in which a verb in the infinitive mode is an essential element.

## CLASSIFICATION OF THE INFINITIVE PREDICATES.

The infinitive predicates are divided into intransitive, transitive, passive, intransitive post-adjective, intransitive post-substantive, passive post-adjective, and passive post-substantive.



## FORMATION OF THE INFINITIVE PREDICATES.

The infinitive predicates are formed from the predication by dropping the nominative case, and changing the verb from the finite modes to the infinitive; as,

PREDICATIONS.	INFINITIVE PREDICATES.
Intransitive predication.	Intransitive infinitive predicate.
The invalid walked.	To walk.
The debtor has absconded.	To have absconded.
Transitive predication.	Transitive infinitive predicate.
These Indians hunt beaver.	To hunt beaver.
The society built a church.	To have built a church.
Passive predication.	Passive infinitive predicate.
He is suspected.	To be suspected.
A wolf has been seen.	To have been seen.
Intransitive post-adjective predication.	Intransitive post-adjective infinitive predicate.
I am cautious.	To be cautious.
The boys were studious.	To have been studious.
Intransitive post-substantive predication.	Intrans. post-substantive infinitive predicate.
He was a gardener.	To be a gardener.
He became a great man.	To have become a great man.
Passive post-adjective predication.	Passive post-adjective infinitive predicate.
The notes are thought good.	To be thought good.
He was accounted worthy.	To have been accounted worthy.
Passive post-substantive predication.	Passive post-substantive infinitive predicate.
He was made a judge.	To be made a judge.
He will be chosen president.	To have been chosen president.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Adjectives belong to verbs in the infinitive mode.

Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

The infinitives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

A verb in the infinitive mode having no dependent construction, is independent.



The infinitive predicates are introduced,

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. After verbs :                                  | 7. After <i>about</i> :                 |
| 2. After participles :                            | 8. After <i>so</i> — <i>as</i> commonly |
| 3. After gerundives :                             | combined with an adjective :            |
| 4. After nouns and pronouns ;                     | 9. After <i>than</i> combined with      |
| 5. After adjectives :                             | an adjective in the comparative degree. |
| 6. After <i>enough</i> preceded by an adjective : |   |

#### THE INTRANSITIVE INFINITIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological element of the intransitive infinitive predicate, is an intransitive verb in the infinitive mode.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This steamboat is to ply on the Hudson.

This farmer has determined to remove to Oregon.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*This steamboat is to ply on the Hudson.*

*This farmer has determined to remove to Oregon.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*To ply* is a regular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *steamboat*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*To remove* is a regular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *has determined*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

#### Logical synthesis.

*This steamboat is*—Intransitive predication.

*To ply*—Intransitive infinitive predicate.

*This farmer has determined to remove*—Transitive predication.

*To remove*—Intransitive infinitive predicate.

The citizens have met, to confer on political matters.

The pupils ought to have come earlier.

The obstinate child was compelled to submit.

These horses are to run in the race.

I saw some cattle trying to get into a cornfield.

The animal having tried, in vain, to escape from the inclosure, became peaceable.

This simpleton broke his leg in attempting to fly with artificial wings.

The debtor is said to have absconded.

The youth urged his friend to go to school.

"It is time to awake out of sleep."

Obs. There are some difficulties in analyzing and synthetizing the verb in the infinitive mode: a few hints are, therefore, necessary in addition to the preceding formulas.

*Trying to get*—Transitive participial predicate. *To get*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To get* is an irregular, intransitive verb, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *trying*. Rule.—Transitive participles govern the objective case.

*In attempting to fly*—Transitive prepositional gerundive predicate. *To fly*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To fly* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, neuter gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *attempting*. Rule.—Transitive gerundives govern the objective case.

*The youth urged his friend*—Transitive predication. *To go*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To go* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *friend*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*It is time*—Intransitive post-substantive predication. *To awake*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To awake* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *you* in the phrase *For you* understood.

She shall rejoice in time to come.

It is sometimes pleasant to ride on horseback.

The patient is not well enough to ride out.

This devotee is stupid enough to go on a pilgrimage to Mecca.

My neighbor is about to go to market.

It is often better to submit to injustice than to resort to judicial proceedings.

To have lived up to the dignity of human nature during a long life, must afford great satisfaction to aged persons.

*It is sometimes pleasant*—Intransitive post-adjective predication. *To ride*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To ride* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *us* in the phrase *For us* understood after *pleasant*.

*The patient is not well enough*—Intransitive post-adjective predication. *To ride*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To ride* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *patient*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*My neighbor is about*—Intransitive predication. *To go*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To go* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *neighbor*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*To have lived up*—Intransitive infinitive predicate. *To have lived up must afford great satisfaction*—Transitive predication. *To have lived* is a regular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present perfect tense, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *must afford*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

Obs. When the verb in the infinitive mode refers to a noun or a pronoun, it is similar in nature to the participle; and when it is the agent or the subject of a verb, or is governed by a transitive word, it is similar in nature to the gerundive.

## THE TRANSITIVE INFINITIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the transitive infinitive predicate, are a transitive verb in the infinitive mode, and an objective case.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The congregation have met, to worship God.

Parents sometimes send young children to school, to get them out of the way.

The secretary is presumed to have influenced the president.

These Indians have gone off, to hunt beaver.

The nation ought to have preferred peace to war.

"Then Peter began to rebuke him."

We rejoiced to hear the glad tidings.

In trying to please every body we can please no body.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The congregation have met, to worship God.*

*"To confess the truth, I was in fault."*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*To worship* is a regular, transitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *congregation*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*God* is a proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, objective case, and is governed by *worship*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case.

*To confess* is a regular, transitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and is independent. Rule.—A verb in the infinitive mode having no constructive dependence, is independent.

## Logical synthesis.

*The congregation have met*—Intransitive predication.

*To worship God*—Transitive infinitive predicate.

*To confess the truth*—Transitive infinitive predicate.

*I was*—Intransitive predication.

The driver hoping to arrest the flight of his horses, held on to the reins.

This noble young man risked his life in endeavoring to save a stranger from drowning.

The professor urged the students to make thorough preparation for the class-room.

"Starve not yourselves, to feed lackeys."

This citizen is anxious to amass wealth.

John, will you be so good as to build a fire?

Isaac, will you be good enough to bring a pail of water?

"It costs more to revenge injuries than to bear them."

It is better to suffer wrong than to do wrong.

"To confess the truth, I was in fault."

To have done right during a long life must afford great satisfaction to aged persons.

#### THE PASSIVE INFINITIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological element of the passive infinitive predicate, is a passive verb in the infinitive mode.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The stranger rose, to be presented to the company.

These animals ought to be kindly treated.

"The Lord's name is to be praised."

These ladies expected to be invited to the party.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The stranger rose, to be presented to the company.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*To be presented* is a regular, passive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *stranger*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The stranger rose*—Intransitive predication.

*To be presented*—Passive infinitive predicate.

That soldier is known to have been slain.

The president is supposed to have been influenced by the secretary.

The report was ordered to be printed for the use of the senate.

The bill was laid on the table, to be called up on a future day.

To die is to cease to live.

Public speakers wishing to be heard distinctly, often pitch their voices on too high a key.

A laborer having called on his employer to be paid for past services, was put off to another day.

The traveler ordered his horse to be brought instantly.

The broker offered a note to be discounted.

God is worthy to be adored by all rational beings.

The ground is dry enough to be ploughed.

My farm is about to be sold at auction.

A wolf is said to have been seen yesterday on Laurel Hill.

In the sentence—'*To die is to cease to live.*'

*To die* is nominative case to *is*, and *to cease* is nominative case after *is*.

#### THE INTRANSITIVE POST-ADJECTIVE INFINITIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-adjective infinitive predicate, are an intransitive verb in the infinitive mode, and an adjective.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

We should all endeavor to be useful.

This preacher is ever aiming to be eloquent.

This countryman is said to be meanly parsimonious.

We were advised to be cautious in our approaches.

The ride ought not to seem long.

The young ladies ought to have been more diligent.

The doctor found his patient trying to be cheerful.

Having purposed to become rich, he could not sustain losses with patience.



This good man secured the approbation of his own heart by endeavoring to be just.

The teacher induced his pupils to be studious.

The father encouraged his sons to be industrious.

The poor bird is anxious to be free.

My hopeful friend is always about to be successful.

Will you be so good as to be silent for a while?

The horses ought to have been fed, so as to have been ready for starting in proper time.

It is better to be studious than to be idle.

It is better to remain poor than to be finally condemned for injustice.

It is less painful to learn in youth than to be ignorant in mature age.

To have been calm under such provocations was a proof of remarkable self-control.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*We should all endeavor to be useful.*

*To have been calm under such provocations was a proof of remarkable self-control.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*To be* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *we*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*Useful* is a common adjective, and belongs to *we*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to nouns and pronouns.

*Calm* is an adjective, and belongs to *to have been*. Rule.—Adjectives belong to verbs in the infinitive mode.

Logical synthesis.

*We should all endeavor*—Intransitive predication.

*To be useful*—Intransitive post-adjective infinitive predicate.

*To have been calm*—Intransitive post-adjective infinitive predicate.

*To have been calm was a proof*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.



THE INTRANSITIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE INFINITIVE  
PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the intransitive post-substantive infinitive predicate, are an intransitive verb in the infinitive mode, and a nominative or an objective case after.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The youth concluded to be a printer.

This republic is destined to become a great nation.

The president is declared to have been a friend to this measure.

Having determined to become a scholar, he prepared for college.

A passenger aiming to be the foremost man on the wharf, fell into the dock.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The youth concluded to be a printer.*

*We know the animal to have been a monster.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Printer* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *to be*. Rule.—The infinitives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

*Monster* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and objective case after *to be*. Rule.—The infinitives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

Logical synthesis.

*The youth concluded to be a printer*—Transitive predication.

*To be a printer*—Intransitive post-substantive infinitive predicate.

*We know the animal*—Transitive predication.

*To have been a monster*—Intransitive post-substantive infinitive predicate.

This backwoodsman is said to be a good shot.  
 We know the animal to have been a monster from his bones.  
 The lady urged her son to become a clergyman.  
 The young man is about to become a clergyman.  
 My imprudent friend urged me to become an author.  
 It is much better to be studious than to remain an ignoramus.  
 Moses showed his faith by refusing to become the son of  
 Pharaoh's daughter.  
 This honest clerk was unwilling to become a partner in such  
 a concern.

#### THE PASSIVE POST-ADJECTIVE INFINITIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-adjective infinitive predicate, are a passive verb in the infinitive mode, and an adjective.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The deficiency ought to be made good.  
 The orator was anxious to be thought eloquent.  
 This alderman was anxious to be accounted honest.  
 My visionary friend expects to be made rich by some sudden  
 turn of fortune.  
 This poor fellow is said to have been born blind.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The deficiency ought to be made good.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*To be made* is an irregular, passive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *deficiency*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*Good* is a common adjective, and belongs to *deficiency*. Rule.—adjectives belong to nouns.

Logical synthesis.

*The deficiency ought*—Intransitive predication.

*To be made good*—Passive post-adjective infinitive predicate.

## THE PASSIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE INFINITIVE PREDICATE.

The essential etymological elements of the passive post-substantive infinitive predicate, are a passive verb in the infinitive mode, and a nominative or an objective case after.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This great statesmen ought to have been chosen president.

That enthusiast expects to be accounted righteous, without being habitually righteous in his conduct.

This superficial scholar is anxious to be regarded a prodigy of learning.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*This great statesman ought to have been chosen president.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*To have been chosen* is an irregular, passive verb, infinitive mode, present perfect tense, and belongs to *statesman*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*President* is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *to have been chosen*. Rule.—The infinitives of those verbs which admit the same case to them and after them, retain the latter.

## Logical synthesis.

*This great statesman ought*—Intransitive predication.

*To have been chosen president*—Passive post-substantive infinitive predicate.

THE USE AND OMISSION OF *to* AND *to be* IN INFINITIVE PREDICATES AFTER CERTAIN VERBS.

*To* is commonly omitted in infinitive predicates after the transitive verbs *make*, *see*, *hear*, *feel*, and *let*, and after their participles and gerundives.

*To be* is commonly omitted in infinitive predicates

after the transitive verbs *make*, *see*, *hear*, and *feel*, and after their participles and gerundives.

### Make.

When the infinitive denotes the effect of making, *to* is generally omitted.

When the infinitive denotes the purpose of the maker, *to* is not omitted.

### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The rider made the horse run at the top of his speed.

I made a whistle, to please my son.

The servant made the fire burn briskly.

The travelers made a fire, to keep off the wild beasts.

Throwing grass only made the youngster laugh.

The preacher made a few additional remarks, to impress the subject on the minds of his audience.

This gentleman is trying to make his idle son a scholar.

The teacher having made his pupils write carefully after the copies, is not ashamed of their penmanship.

### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The rider made the horse run at the top of his speed.*

*I made a whistle, to please my son.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Run* is an irregular, intransitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *horse*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

*To please* is a regular, transitive verb, infinitive mode, present tense, and belongs to *I*. Rule.—Verbs in the infinitive mode belong to nouns and pronouns.

### Logical synthesis.

*The rider made the horse*—Transitive predication.

*Run*—Intransitive infinitive predicate.

*I made a whistle*—Transitive predication.

*To please my son*—Transitive infinitive predicate.

This farmer, having made a large shed to protect his cattle from inclement weather, expects to winter them without loss.

This merchant avoids some expense, by making his son perform the duties of a clerk.

The citizens may prevent periodical inundations by making a levee, to keep the water in the ordinary channel.

Parents have a right to make their children obey them.

I have determined to make better fences, to keep my neighbors' cattle off my premises.

Sick children are often made to take nauseating medicine.

"Man was made to mourn."

The lad was made to ask the teacher's pardon for having been indecorous towards him.

See.

How can you see to read in so dim a light?

I saw the boy throw the stone.

A great number of barbarous people were present, to see the bullies fight.

The little boy was delighted to see the dog carry the basket.

The youth was determined to see his parents comfortable.

"We sometimes see bad men honored."

The bystanders were sorry to see the beast cruelly treated.

We saw the battle fought.

This sportsman having repeatedly seen the horses run together, knows their relative speed.

We know the deleterious effects of alcohol by having seen many persons ruined by it.

A lad was seen to fall into the dock.

By the aid of a microscope, blood may be seen to circulate in the web of a frog's foot.

Having been seen to pass through the turnpike gate, the animal is presumed to be in that direction.

He is known to be able to write by having been seen to write.

Obs. *To* is sometimes omitted in the infinitive predicates, after *behold*, *view*, *mark*, *observe*, *watch*, and *spy*. After these words, however, the participial structures are generally preferable to the infinitive.

## Hear.

I have often heard the lark sing.

We have never heard the bishop preach.

I have heard my uncle relate many amusing incidents of travel.

We have frequently heard this clergyman read prayers.

The people assembled in great numbers, to hear the candidates speak.

This miser has often been heard to reproach niggardly men.

Having heard the letter read, I approved its contents.

Your taste in elocution will be improved by hearing this orator speak.

## Feel.

When *feel* is used transitively to express bodily perception, the infinitive predicate that follows should be used without *to* or *to be*; but when it expresses a mental affection, or is used intransitively, *to* or *to be* should be expressed.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

"I felt something sting me."

The boy felt a cold snake touch his foot.

"I feel a desire to excel."

The lady felt the remark to be severe.

The guardian felt the responsibility to be a burden.

Feeling the heat oppressive in the city, they hastened to the country.

I feel sorry to hear you make such a remark.

"I felt about to find the door."

He feels bound to comply with his contract.

The exile feels anxious to visit his native land.

## Let.

Father, will you let me ride in the carriage?

"Let every mortal ear attend."

"Come, let us sing unto the Lord, let us heartily rejoice in the strength of our salvation."



"O worship the Lord in the beauty of holiness; let the whole earth stand in awe of him."

Let us be moderate in our expectations of the enjoyment of earthly good.

Candid men are willing to let others enjoy their own opinions.

The owner of this plantation is obliged to let it be sold under a mortgage.

The teacher having let his pupils have their own way for some time, found it difficult to reduce them to order.

I have regretted letting my son leave home so early.

This benevolent planter has determined on letting his slaves go to Liberia immediately.

The plantation was let out to be cultivated.

The rope was let go too soon.

### Bid.

When *bid* commands an action, *to* in the infinitive predicate that follows, should commonly be omitted; but, when it means to promise or to offer, *to* should be inserted.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

"His mercy bids me come."

Henry, bid your dog chase the fowls from the garden.

The servant was bidden to bring a pail of water.

The lady, in bidding her daughter to study her lesson, acted from the kindest motives.

This young artist bids fair to excel in statuary.

This publisher bids high, to gain patronage for his series of school books.

### Have, help, and find.

*To* is sometimes omitted in infinitive predicates after *have* and *help*; but, in nearly all cases, it is best to insert it.

*To be* is sometimes omitted in infinitive predicates after *have* and *find*.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The nation has to pay the interest on an immense debt.



We shall have to go home in a storm.

When will you have me let go the rope?

I had to use all my dexterity in swimming, to save my friend from drowning.

This politic man loves to have his name appear in print.

We must have our wool spun on a mule.

This publisher has all his books printed on a power-press.

The best teachers will have their pupils study the best textbooks.

This intelligent farmer will have his grounds cultivated in the best manner.

Brother, will you help me work this problem?

"Help us, O Lord, thy yoke to wear."

The carpenter must have ten men, to help him raise the frame of a barn.

I would have my son obedient to his teacher.

Politicians would have the people submissive to party dictation.

The professor would have every lesson recited in an elegant manner.

You will find the buildings in a dilapidated condition.

The party found the lost child concealed in a hollow tree.

I have always found this man a fast friend.

### Dare, durst.

When dare is used in the sense of *to venture* and without a personal inflection, *to* may be generally omitted in the infinitive predicate that follows.

When *dare* is used in the sense of *to venture* without a personal inflection, with an auxiliary, or as a regular verb in the sense of *to provoke* or *to challenge*, *to* should be inserted in the infinitive predicate which may follow.

*Durst* is used as an auxiliary without personal inflection in the indicative mode, indefinite perfect tense.

### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I dare say you have seen such things before.

We dare not pass that bridge in the night.  
This invalid dare not sleep with the window open.  
The pupils dare not transgress the rules.  
The boys do not dare to trespass on my grounds.  
The enemy will not dare to attack us in our strong position.  
The lady dare not be electrified.  
This independent man dares to be singular.  
The applicant for the school durst not be examined.  
The laborers durst not be tardy in coming to their work.  
We should ever dare to perform our duty.  
"Peradventure for a good man some would even dare to die."  
The young man dared to make propositions.  
This quarrelsome fellow dared any one of us to fight.  
Let not a layman dare to oppose this rule.  
A pugnacious boy living in a village, dared a peaceable lad living in the country, to knock a chip from his shoulder.

### Need.

When *need* is used with an other verb without the intervention of *to*, it may be regarded an auxiliary. As such it is used in the present and present perfect tenses of the potential mode.

When *need* is transitive, it is regular in its principal parts and personal inflections.

When used as a principal verb, *to* in the infinitive predicate which may follow, should be expressed.

### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I need not assign a reason for my conduct.  
The hucksters need not be in market much before daylight.  
You need not have walked so far.  
The names of the persons composing this large convention, need not be recorded.  
Nothing more need be said on the subject.  
He need not have been apprehensive of failure in such an enterprise.  
This youth needs to be urged forward in his studies.

The animals need to be fed regularly.

The subject needs to be more fully illustrated.

The buildings will need to be thoroughly repaired in a few years.

Can argument be needed, to prove so plain a point?

Moral instruction needs to have a prominent place in education.

My daughter need not study grammar.

The young man needs to be instructed in the catechism.

My daughter needs not to study grammar.

His conduct needs not to be repented of.

You need not be ashamed of your calling.

The lad needs to be admonished for improper conduct.

The church may need repairs.

The oxen need shoeing immediately.

My ward will need funds, to pay current expenses at college.

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE STRUCTURES.

The structures of the language having been discussed in detail, they will be presented in a synopsis on the two pages immediately following.

The general names of the predicative structures are predication, participial predicate, gerundive predicate, prepositional gerundive predicate, and infinitive predicate. These are divided into intransitive, transitive, passive, intransitive post adjective, intransitive post-substantive, passive post-adjective, and passive post substantive. The whole number of the predicative structures is thirty-five, the nomenclature of which is formed by a combination of twelve terms.

The predications are the leading structures from which the rest are formed, as indicated by preceding rules and illustrations. The latter associations are distinguished in the synopsis by *Italic letters*.

An expert grammarian of the old school, can learn all the structures of the language by name and characteristic, in one hour.

# SYNOPSIS OF THE STRUCTURES.

204

## THE PREDICATIONS.

Intransitive predication.

The invalid walked.

The debtor has absconded.

Transitive predication.

These Indians hunt beaver.

The society built a church.

Passive predication.

He is suspected.

A wolf has been seen.

Intransitive post-adjecive predication.

I am cautious.

The boys were studious.

Intrans. post-substantive predication.

He was a gardener.

He became a great man.

Passive post-adjecive predication.

The notes are thought good.

He was accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive predication.

He was made a judge.

He was chosen vice-president.

ident.

## THE PARTICIPIAL PREDICATES.

Intransitive participial predicate.

John saw him *walking*.

The debtor *having absconded*, avoided arrest.

Transitive participial predicate.

The agent found the Indians *hunting beaver*.

*Having built a church*, they need a clergyman.

Passive participial predicate.

*Being suspected*, he may be arrested.

A wolf *having been seen*, an alarm was sounded.

Intransitive post-adjecive participial predicate.

*Being cautious*, I avoided the snare.

*Being studious*, they will acquire knowledge.

Intransitive post-substantive participial predicate.

*Being a gardener*, he could obtain employment.

*Become a great man*, he is much venerated.

Passive post-adjecive participial predicate.

*Being thought good*, the notes were received.

*Having been accounted worthy*, he was accepted.

Passive post-substantive participial predicate.

*Having been made a judge*, he gave up farming.

*Having been chosen vice-president*, he may

become president.

## THE GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

Intransitive gerundive predicate.

The physician recommended *walking*.

*His absconding* prevented arrest.

Transitive gerundive predicate.

*Hunting beaver* is their employment.

*Their building a church* indicates prosperity.

Passive gerundive predicate.

His viciousness caused *his being suspected*.

*His being seen* was not doubted.

Intransitive post-adjecive gerundive predicate.

*My being cautious* saved my life.

*Being studious* may preserve their morals.

Intransitive post-substantive gerundive predicate.

*His being a gardener* secured employment.

He anticipated *becoming a great man*.

Passive post-adjecive gerundive predicate.

*Their being thought good* caused their reception.

*His being accounted worthy* secured acceptance.

Passive post-substantive gerundive predicate.

*His being made judge* caused him to give up farming.

*His being chosen vice-president* may secure to

him the presidency.

## THE PREDICATIONS.

Intransitive predication.

The invalid walked.

The debtor has absconded.

Transitive predication.

These Indians hunt beaver. These Indians are employed in hunting beaver. The society built a church. They have paid for building the church.

Passive predication.

He is suspected.

A wolf has been seen.

Intransitive post-adjective predication.

I am cautious.

The boys were studious.

Intrans. post-substantive predication.

He was a gardener.

He became a great man.

Passive post-adjective predication.

The notes are thought good.

He was accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive predication.

He was made a judge.

He was chosen vice-president.

ident.

The structures in this synopsis are to be read by name from the left to the right across both pages, the predication on the second page being left out.

## THE PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATIONS.

● Intransitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

His health may be improved by walking.

The debtor avoided arrest by absconding.

Transitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

These Indians are employed in hunting beaver. They have paid for building the church.

Passive prepositional gerundive predicate.

His reputation was injured by being suspected.

The wolf was not alarmed at being seen.

Intransitive post-adjective prepositional gerundive predicate.

By being cautious I avoided the snare.

The boys were commended for being studious.

Intransitive post-substantive prepositional gerundive predicate.

By being a gardener he could secure employment.

He resolved on becoming a great man.

Passive post-adjective prepositional gerundive predicate.

By being thought good the notes become current.

He had some hope of being accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive prepositional gerundive predicate.

On being made a judge he gave up farming.

By being chosen vice-president he may become president.

The structures in this synopsis are to be read by name from the left to the right across both pages, the predication on the second page being left out.

## THE INFINITIVE PREDICATIONS.

Intransitive infinitive predicate.

The invalid must try to walk.

The debtor was advised to abscond.

Transitive infinitive predicate.

They teach their children to hunt beaver.

An architect was engaged to build the church.

Passive infinitive predicate.

He ought to be suspected.

A wolf is said to have been seen.

Intransitive post-adjective infinitive predicate.

I had resolved to be cautious.

The teacher encouraged them to be studious.

Intransitive post-substantive infinitive predicate.

He determined to be a gardener.

He resolved to become a great man.

Passive post-adjective infinitive predicate.

The notes began to be thought good.

He had hoped to be accounted worthy.

Passive post-substantive infinitive predicate.

This able jurist ought to have been made judge.

The nominee expected to be chosen vice-president.

The structures in this synopsis are to be read by name from the left to the right across both pages, the predication on the second page being left out.



GERUNDIVE AND INFINITIVE PREDICATES AND SUBSTANTIVE  
EQUIVALENTS COMPARED.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Seeing the sun is pleasant.

To see the sun is pleasant.

It is pleasant to see the sun.

Sleeping too much is injurious to health.

Too much sleep is injurious to health.

It is injurious to health, to sleep too much.

His coming was announced in the papers.

His arrival was announced in the papers.

The mixing of so many ingredients makes a jumble.

The mixture of so many ingredients makes a jumble.

It makes a jumble, to mix so many ingredients.

Bathing in cool water is agreeable in warm weather.

A bath in cool water is agreeable in warm weather.

It is agreeable, to bathe in cool water in warm weather.

Ploughing in stony ground is hard work.

It is hard work, to plough in stony ground.

Going to the falls would consume too much time.

A journey to the falls would consume too much time.

It would consume too much time, to go to the falls.

Talking of one's own abilities is commonly evidence of conceitedness.

It is commonly evidence of conceitedness, to talk of one's own abilities.

Lounging in places of public resort, is ruinous to a man's reputation.

It is ruinous to a man's reputation, to lounge in places of public resort.

Riding on horseback is exhilarating.

A ride on horseback would be exhilarating.

It would be exhilarating, to ride on horseback.

Dying is ceasing to live.

To die is to cease to live.

Death is ceasing to live.

Submission to injustice is sometimes better than resort to judicial proceedings.

It is sometimes better to submit to injustice than to resort to judicial proceedings.

The people have met for consulting on local matters.

The people have met for consultation on local matters.

The people have met, to consult on local matters.

This mechanic has determined on settling in Nebraska.

This mechanic has determined on settlement in Nebraska.

This mechanic has determined to settle in Nebraska.

We should always be candid in judging of the conduct of others.

We should always be candid in our judgment of the conduct of others.

Your mother will be alarmed at our delaying so long.

Your mother will be alarmed at our long delay.

Turning a grindstone is uninteresting work.

It is uninteresting work, to turn a grindstone.

The army regretted losing their best officers.

The army regretted the loss of their best officers.

Teaching idle children is irksome business.

It is irksome business, to teach idle children.

Cramming students for public examination, is a common practice in popular schools.

It is a common practice in popular schools, to cram students for public examination.

Doing right affords much satisfaction to a just man.

It affords much satisfaction to a just man, to do right.

Parents sometimes send young children to school, for the purpose of getting them out of the way.



Parents sometimes send young children to school, to get them out of the way.

We rejoiced at hearing the glad tidings.

We rejoiced to hear the glad tidings.

His having relieved many persons in distress, was a source of much satisfaction to him in old age.

It was a source of much satisfaction to him in old age, to have relieved many persons in distress.

The boys were punished for robbing a bird's nest.

The boys were punished for the robbery of a bird's nest.

Men are honored for having performed noble deeds for the benefit of their species.

Men are honored for the performance of noble deeds for the benefit of their species.

My time is chiefly occupied in composing a history of my native county.

My time is chiefly occupied in the composition of a history of my native county.

This writer is very exact in constructing his sentences.

This writer is very exact in the construction of his sentences.

This farmer is punctual in fulfilling his contracts.

This farmer is punctual in the fulfilment of his contracts.

Much has been written on educating the rising generation.

Much has been written on the education of the rising generation.

William's restoration to my favor depends on his making reparation for past injustice.

William's restoration to my favor depends on a reparation for past injustice.

Aged persons are pleased with reviewing former scenes.

Aged persons are pleased with a review of former scenes.

The state secured prosperity by establishing judicious laws.

The state secured prosperity by the establishment of judicious laws.

God is worthy of adoration by all rational beings.

God is worthy to be adored by all rational beings.

The former viciousness of this man caused his being suspected of this crime.

The former viciousness of this man caused him to be suspected of this crime.

The cold weather did not prevent the excursion from being enjoyed.

The cold weather did not prevent the enjoyment of the excursion.

His being traduced by political enemies is a matter of course.

To be traduced by political enemies is a matter of course.

It is a matter of course, to be traduced by political enemies.

The ground is dry enough for ploughing.

The ground is dry enough to be ploughed.

The ground is dry enough for the plough.

Vain persons are fond of being flattered.

Vain persons are fond of flattery.

A man may be justly suspected of being dishonest, on account of his being associated with dishonest men.

A man may be justly suspected of dishonesty, on account of his association with dishonest men.

The boys gained access to the garden without being discovered by the owner.

The boys gained access to the garden without discovery by the owner.

The emperor traveled through his dominions without being recognized by any of his subjects.

The emperor traveled through his dominions without recognition by any of his subjects.

We arrived at our place of destination without having been delayed by accident.

We arrived at our place of destination without delay by accident.

Much depends upon the rule's being observed.

Much depends upon the observance of the rule.

His being idle in summer has brought a winter of poverty.

His idleness in summer has brought a winter of poverty.

We regret his being impatient.

We regret his impatience.

Being humble before the great Creator is ever appropriate.

Humility before the great Creator is ever appropriate.

It is ever appropriate, to be humble before the great Creator.

The being unhappy in confinement is not surprising.

Unhappiness in confinement is not surprising.

It is not surprising for one to be unhappy in confinement.

His being sick was injurious to his business.

His sickness was injurious to his business.

It was injurious to his business, to be sick.

My being cautious has often saved my life.

My innate caution has often saved my life.

The being lavish in the use of money often brings people to poverty.

Lavishness in the use of money often brings people to poverty.

His being diligent in study secured the favor of the professors.

His habitual diligence in study secured the favor of the professors.

Their having been free renders present subjection more galling.

Their former freedom renders present subjection more galling.

The poor bird is anxious for freedom.

The poor bird is anxious to be free.

Wealth affords no sufficient ground for being impudent.

Wealth affords no sufficient ground for impudence.

His being calm under such provocations is a proof of remarkable self-control.

Calmness under such provocations is a proof of remarkable self-control.

To have been calm under such provocations is a proof of remarkable self-control.

It is a proof of remarkable self-control, to have been calm under such provocations.

Rich men are seldom neglected for having been poor.

Rich men are seldom neglected on account of former poverty.

This individual took delight in being odd.

This individual took delight in his own oddities.

These merchants should be above being dishonorable.

These merchants should be above dishonor.

We pity this man on account of his being blind.

We pity this man on account of his blindness.

An honest man is conscious of being upright.

An honest man is conscious of uprightness.

There is no doubt of its being lawful.

There is no doubt of its lawfulness.

They were displeased on account of our being so formal.

They were displeased on account of our precise formality.

Its being new is nothing against its being valuable.

Its being new is nothing against its great value.

I see nothing against the note's being genuine.

I see nothing against the genuineness of the note.

The present high price of these goods arises from their being scarce.

The present high price of these goods arises from their scarcity.

The stranger did not deny being a Christian.

The stranger did not deny his Christian faith.

We should avoid being parsimonious.

We should avoid parsimoniousness.

My friend did not advise my becoming an author.

My friend did not advise me to become an author.

His becoming a governor had not been expected by his friends.

His friends had not expected him to become a governor.

His being an honest man has been proved by a long life of fair dealing.

His innate honesty has been proved by a long life of fair dealing.

This man has been proved to be innately honest, by a long life of fair dealing.

His having been a sailor is known by his sea-phrases.

He is known to have been a sailor from his sea-phrases.

The youth concluded on being a printer.

The youth concluded to be a printer.

A passenger, aiming at being the foremost man on the wharf, fell into the dock.

A passenger, aiming to be the foremost man on the wharf, fell into the dock.

I have some doubt of that politician's being honest.

I have some doubt of the honesty of that politician.

His being made sick by hard labor is known with certainty.

He is certainly known to have been made sick by hard labor.

THE END OF THE SECOND PART.

THE

ANALYTIC AND SYNTHETIC

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

---

PART THIRD.

---

THE CONJUNCTION.

CONJUNCTIONS connect similar parts of speech, similar predicates, predications, predications and insentensic predicates, and prepositional structures.

CLASSIFICATION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are divided into nine classes ; namely :

- |                    |                  |                            |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Additive :      | 4. Adversative : | 7. Adverbial :             |
| 2. Alternative :   | 5. Causative :   | 8. Comparative adverbial : |
| 3. Corresponsive : | 6. Inferential : | 9. Conditional.            |

1. THE ADDITIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

An *additive conjunction* implies an addition to a word or a structure. The words of this class are,

And,	likewise,	farther,	besides,
as well as,	too,	further,	nay,
also,	that,	furthermore,	moreover.



## 2. THE ALTERNATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

An *alternative conjunction* expresses an alternative of two or more words or structures. The words of this class are,

Or,                      nor,                      else,                      otherwise.

## 3. THE CORRESPONDIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

A *correspondive conjunction* is used with some other conjunction placed after it. The words of this class, and the conjunctions with which they correspond, are,

Both—	and ;	as—	as ;
either    }	— or ;	as—	so ;
whether    }		so—	as ;
neither—	nor ;	so—	that ;
not only—	but ;	if —	then.
though—	yet ;		

*And, or, nor, AND as well as, CONNECTING NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.*

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as, connect similar parts of speech.*

In arranging personal nouns connected by *and, or, or nor*, they should be placed in the order in which they are regarded or honored, the most worthy being placed first.

In arranging pronouns, or nouns and pronouns, the first person should be placed last, unless the superior position, or the confessional nature of the expression, should warrant a precedence.

And.

A general principle.

Two or more nouns or pronouns, or a single noun or pronoun or more, connected by *and*, are equivalent in construction to a noun or a pronoun in the plural number ; and concordant



words agree with them jointly. Such words are thus construed also, when *and* is understood.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Charles and William are at work in the garden. They are quite diligent.

Jane and Susan have gone to church.

Idleness and ignorance are the chief causes of vice and abject poverty.

"Thou art my hiding place and my shield."

Six and four are ten.

Wheat, coal, and iron, are the staple commodities of Pennsylvania.

"Learning and ignorance, wisdom and folly, were strangely combined in this celebrated man."

He and I are about equal in age and acquirements.

James and I are about to make an excursion in the country.

My father and I have just purchased one horse, two cows, five hogs, and twenty sheep. They are all in good condition.

This learned clergyman and his pious deacon agree remarkably in their religious opinions. They spend much time in conversation.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Charles and William are at work in the garden.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*And* is an additive conjunction, and connects *Charles* and *William*. Rule.—*And*, *or*, *nor*, and *as well as*, connect similar parts of speech.

*Are* is an irregular, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present tense, plural number, third person, and agrees with *Charles* and *William*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

Logical synthesis.

*Charles and William are*—Intransitive predication.

*At work*—*In the garden*—Prepositional phrases.

Some apples and peaches have been sent to our city friends.  
Many citizens and a few strangers were present at the barbecue.

"Honor thy father and thy mother."

The teacher has sent home Isaac's and Benjamin's books.  
This Virginian graduated at William and Mary's college.  
I went to Baltimore in John and Henry's clipper.

The world has often been scourged by war, pestilence, and famine.

"There is a natural difference between merit and demerit, virtue and vice, wisdom and folly."

Cultivate your intellectual faculties by study and reflection.  
Saints Peter and Paul were eminent apostles.

My son and daughter, having been carefully educated, may be left, with confidence, to their personal resources.

Having purchased a horse and buggy, the gentleman anticipates many a pleasant drive.

In prohibiting obscenity and profane language, the professors have a special regard to the dignity and morals of the students.

This enterprising planter, having determined on removing to Texas, is about to sell his lands, goods, and chattels at public sale.

The first exception to the general principle.

Two or more nouns in the singular number connected by *and*, and serving to describe one person, are equivalent in construction to a noun in the singular number.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

"This philosopher and poet was banished from his country.

"The hue and cry of the country pursues him."

"Flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee."

This orator and patriot is known throughout the civilized world.

Such a saviour and redeemer has been provided.

That great general and statesman is entitled to the gratitude of his countrymen.

My friend and patron has been very liberal.

Why is dust and ashes proud ?

The second exception to the general principle.

Two or more nouns in the singular number, connected by *and*, and preceded by *each*, *every*, or *no*, are equivalent in construction to a noun or a pronoun in the singular number in the same sentence : in a following sentence, they may be represented jointly by a noun or a pronoun in the plural number.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Each man and each woman carries in the hand an evergreen branch.

Every limb and every feature has been portrayed with surprising accuracy

Every man, woman, and child in the settlement, was slain by the savage foe. They were butchered in a ruthless manner.

No ill-will and no revenge is indulged in a Christian heart.

"Each worm and each insect is a marvel of creative power."

No wife, no mother, no child, soothes his cares.

"Every mountain and every island was moved out of its place."

The third exception to the general principle.

A noun or a pronoun connected to an other noun or pronoun by *and*, and emphatically distinguished by such words as *not*, *also*, *likewise*, *too*, *perhaps*, and *consequently*, is in the same case by addition.

A noun or a pronoun, thus connected and distinguished, does not affect the accidents of other words in the same sentence ; but the leading and the added word in the singular number, may be represented jointly, in the following sentence, by a noun or a pronoun in the plural number.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

John, and not Charles, has gone to the gold region.

John, and also Charles, has gone to the gold region.

Benevolence, not ostentation, has prompted these charities.

"Love, and love only, is the loan for love."

He, and not we, is responsible in this contract.

He, and he only, deserves censure.

My son, and also my daughter, has gone to France. They went together in the same packet.

"The good man, and the sinner too, shall have his reward."

My father, and consequently his family, was reduced to poverty by the injustice of this avaricious man.

Sickness, and perhaps death, may be the consequence of this exposure.

The young man sought profitable employment, and not pleasure and amusements.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*John, and not Charles, has gone to the gold region.*

**Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.**

*And* is an additive conjunction, and connects *Charles* to *John*. Rule.—*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect similar parts of speech.

*Not* is a negative adverb, and emphatically distinguishes *Charles* from *John*.

*Charles* is a proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and is in the same case with *John* by addition.

Rule.—A noun or a pronoun connected to an other noun or pronoun by *and*, and emphatically distinguished by such words as *not, also, likewise, too, perhaps, and consequently*, is in the same case by addition.

*Has gone* is an irregular, intransitive verb, indicative mode, present perfect tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *John*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

#### Logical synthesis.

*John has gone*—Intransitive predication.

*And*—Additive conjunction.

*Not Charles*—Addition.

This ingenuous man labors to acquire reputation, not wealth.  
They are both within his reach.

As well as.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

A noun or a pronoun connected to an other noun or pronoun by *as well as*, is in the same case by addition.

A noun or a pronoun connected to an other noun or pronoun by *as well as*, does not affect the accidents of other words in the same sentence ; but the leading and the added word in the singular number, may be represented jointly in the following sentence by a noun or a pronoun in the plural number.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Edward, as well as Horatio, might go.

Hatred, as well as love, is extinguished by absence.

Paul was an eminent apostle, as well as Peter.

Pride, as well as vanity, is conspicuous in his conduct. Both of these traits are prominent in his character.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Edward, as well as Horatio, might go.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*As well as* is an additive conjunction, and connects *Horatio* to *Edward*. Rule.—*And, or, nor*, and *as well as*, connect similar parts of speech.

*Horatio* is a proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and is in the same case with *Edward* by addition. Rule.—A noun or a pronoun connected to an other noun or pronoun by *as well as*, is in the same case by addition.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Edward might go*—Intransitive predication.

*As well as*—Additive conjunction.

*Horatio*—Addition.

The witness, as well as the culprit, was confined in jail until the day of trial.

Common sense, as well as learning, is necessary to make an efficient preacher of the gospel. These qualifications are not always united in the same individual.

The agriculturist, as well as the manufacturer, needs protection from foreign competition.

In this author's style there is much strength, as well as great elegance.

Study mankind, as well as books.

On this project I lost time, as well as money and health.

Many staunch friends of temperance eschew cider and wine, as well as ardent spirits.

I am anxious to visit the continent, as well as my native country.

*And* AND *as well as* CONNECTING PRONOUNS, AND NOUNS  
AND PRONOUNS, OF DIFFERENT PERSONS.

When two or more pronouns, or two or more nouns and pronouns of different persons, are connected by *and* or *as well as*, the pronoun which may represent them, must agree in person with the first person in preference to the second or third, and with the second in preference to the third.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

You, and your brother, and I, are nearly equal in our attainments.

You and my uncles appear to agree in your political opinions.

My brother and I have just finished our professional studies. We are about to commence practice in your city.

My brother and I, assisted by our dog Lion, have caught a hare. We enjoyed the sport amazingly.

You and your sister, as well as several other pupils, have made great progress in your studies. You have done honor to our institution.

I and my brother committed the error. We were careless in making the estimate.



I saw you or your brother yesterday. You look much alike.

“Thou and thy sons with thee, shall bear the iniquity of your priesthood.”

Both, either, and neither.

*Both*, *either*, and *neither*, are adjective pronouns, when used simply to point out a noun, or to represent a noun or a pronoun. When *both* is used with *and*, *either* with *or*, or *neither* with *nor*, and, as a pronoun, represents a substantive word, it partakes of the nature of an adjective pronoun and a conjunction. Hence, in parsing these words thus applied, they may be appropriately denominated pronominal conjunctions.

Both———and.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Both my son and daughter have gone to France.

My son and daughter have both gone to France.

Both he and I have come at the time appointed.

Both mind and heart should be enlisted in benevolent undertakings.

Some physicians love both the study and the practice of medicine.

Both the culprit and the witness were confined in prison to the day of trial.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Both my son and daughter have gone to France.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Both* is a pronominal correspondve conjunction. As a pronoun, it is masculine and feminine gender, plural number, third person, nominative case, and is in apposition with *son* and *daughter*. Rule.—A noun or a pronoun added to an other noun or pronoun by way of explanation or emphasis, is in the same case by apposition. As a conjunction, it corresponds with *and*.

Logical synthesis.

*Both my son and daughter have gone*—Intransitive predication.



Knowing both the author and the publisher of the book, I may be prejudiced in its favor through personal friendship.

Having been both a practical lawyer and a distinguished judge, he is certainly competent to manage difficult cases of law and equity.

This broker has an office in both New York and Baltimore.

This was the opinion of both the attorney and the judge.

This was the opinion of the attorney and the judge both.

"God hath made that same Jesus both Lord and Christ."

It would be well for your clerks to understand both French and German.

We need both the physician's and the surgeon's advice.

*Or* and *nor*; *Either* ————— *or*; *neither* ————— *nor*.

#### A general principle.

Two or more nouns or pronouns, or a single noun and pronoun or more in the singular number, connected by *or* or *nor*, are equivalent in construction to a noun or a pronoun in the singular number; and concordant words in the same sentence agree with them individually: in a sentence immediately following, the words may be represented individually in the singular number, or jointly in the plural.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Either Charles or William must work in the garden.

Neither Jane nor Susan has gone to church. Neither of them was able to go.

Francis or Emeline should become a teacher. They are both competent to teach.

Either the boy or the man can harness the horses. They have nothing else to do.

No man or woman of spirit would submit to such indignities.

Either this lad or that youth did the mischief. They were both on the spot at the time.

Either his courage or his credit has failed. They have both been on the wane for some time.

“Neither the intellect nor the heart can be driven.”

Neither Joseph nor Benjamin was a son of Leah. They were the sons of Rachel.

I shall study neither law nor medicine.

This young scholar will be neither a divine nor a physician.

I hope to learn French or German.

I have not time to study either Spanish or Italian.

This was not the opinion of either the judge or the jury.

This temperate youth could be persuaded to drink neither wine nor ale.

This doctrine was not countenanced by Martin Luther or John Calvin.

Neither the president nor the senate would approve such an item in the treaty.

The executor regarded neither John's nor Mary's rights.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Either Charles or William must work in the garden.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Either* is a pronominal correspondve conjunction. As a pronoun, it is masculine gender, singular number, third person, nominative case, and is in apposition with *Charles* and *William*. Rule.—A noun or a pronoun added to an other noun or pronoun by way of explanation or emphasis, is in the same case by apposition. As a conjunction, it corresponds with *or*.

*Must work* is a regular, intransitive verb, potential mode, present tense, singular number, third person, and agrees with *Charles* or *William*. Rule.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Either Charles or William must work*—Intransitive predication.

*In the garden*—Prepositional phrase.

*Or* AND *nor* CONNECTING NOMINATIVES OF DIFFERENT  
NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

When two or more nominatives of different numbers or persons are connected by *or* or *nor*, the verb must agree with that placed next to it, unless an other nominative is manifestly the leading term. When convenient or practicable, the plural nominative should be placed next to the verb.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Either I or the clerk has committed this blunder. We must have been very careless.

Neither I nor my son is in fault in this matter.

He or thou art the author of this mischief.

Either you or he is to be the representative of this county.

John, Mary, or I, am to spend the winter in Washington and Baltimore.

Neither he nor you were justly treated.

John, Harriet, or you, are to go to the academy.

You, John, or Harriet, is to go to the academy.

My cousin or I shall obtain the premium at our examination.

My father or I am to go to Washington, to obtain a patent for his new machine.

Neither I nor my sister was invited to the party. We were not anxious to be there.

Neither the captain nor the sailors were lost in this disastrous shipwreck.

Were the passengers or the driver injured by this accident?

The general himself or two subordinate officers are to inspect our regiment in a few days.

Neither the president nor his supporters can adduce satisfactory reasons for so many removals from office.

Neither their destination nor their numbers were known.

"Neither riches nor fame renders a man happy."

Were the clerks or the merchant himself guilty of wronging this simple countryman?

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING NOUNS ACCOMPANIED BY A PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE OR AN INSENTENSIC PREDICATE.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

A merchant from Virginia, and a lawyer from Massachusetts, falling in company, began a conversation on politics.

A gentleman on horseback, and a lady and several children in a carriage, have just rode up to the hotel.

"Diligence is the parent of science, and the dispenser of excellence."

Caution in buying goods, and promptitude in paying for them, are commendable traits in a country merchant.

A politician without popularity, a lawyer without clients, a physician without patients, and an author without patronage, may each be in a deplorable condition.

"Take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the spirit."

"Apply thy heart unto instruction, and thine ears unto the words of knowledge."

God made the sun to shine by day, and the moon to give light by night.

The governor, and several members of the legislature, are said to be in secret conclave, in the council chamber.

We saw, at the party, some beautiful ladies, and several gentlemen of fine appearance.

In our excursion, we shall need fishing tackle, and a bag to hold fish.

This prodigy of learning, this scholar, critic, and antiquary, was entirely destitute of good breeding and civility.

Every leaf, every twig, and every drop of water, teems with life.

Sterling integrity, as well as a profound knowledge of law, is indispensable in a judge of the supreme court.

God created the beasts of the field, the fowls of the air, and the fishes of the sea, as well as every creeping thing.

Get a quarter of lamb, or a pair of fowls.

The house and lot in the village, or the farm, ought to be sold.

John O'Neil, as well as several other farmers in his neighborhood, is about to emigrate to America. They have already made their arrangements to go.

Neither inclination to favor, nor ability to assist, is wanting in my friend.

I could procure for dinner neither a round of beef, nor a leg of mutton. Beef and mutton must have been scarce in the market.

A yoke of oxen, or a pair of horses, is indispensable in cultivating even a small farm.

The proper cultivation of his plantation, and not the cultivation of his own faculties, was the chief object of his care. They both needed improvement.

The friends of the unfortunate man, or the governor, has offered a reward for the apprehension of the villain.

The teacher permitted the girls to read, and the boys to declaim.

#### COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

##### Two general principles.

1. A collective noun in the singular number, so combined with other words that the objects composing the collection are referred to collectively, is equivalent in construction to a common noun in a singular number, and concordant words agree with it in the singular number.

2. A collective noun in the singular number, so combined with other words that the objects composing the collection are referred to individually, is equivalent in construction to a common noun in a plural number, and concordant words agree with it in the plural number.

Obs. It is sometimes difficult to determine whether the collective noun should be taken individually or collectively. In such cases the singular or the plural use of the concordant word or words gives a singular or a plural turn to the noun.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The mob is composed of fellows of the baser sort.

The mob were alarmed at the assault of the soldiers.

Some people have no opinion of their own.

The multitude is very great.

The multitude are in want of food. Send them away to get victuals.

The crew of the vessel was a very good one.

The crew were invited into the cabin, to hear preaching.

The regiment consists of a thousand men.

"My people are foolish ; they have not known me."

The British parliament is composed of the house of lords, and the house of commons.

The American congress consists of a senate and a house of representatives.

The senate were divided in their opinions.

Never was any other nation so much disturbed by factions.

"The noble army of martyrs praise thee."

"The holy church, throughout all the world, doth acknowledge thee."

The church has no right to inflict corporal punishments.

The jury have not yet agreed in a decision.

This powerful party is divided into many factions.

The public have been warned against taking these notes.

A part of the ship's cargo was preserved by an other vessel.

All the world are spectators of your conduct.

In France, the peasantry commonly go barefoot.

The army has been defeated with great slaughter.

There is a flock of wild geese. One of their number conducts the rest on their journey.

The public have been duly notified of the meeting to be held, at the Tabernacle, on Thursday evening.

The community have not, thus far, acted harmoniously. Several of the leading members are obstinate in pushing forward favorite measures of their own.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING ADJECTIVES.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect similar parts of speech.

And.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Industrious and economical persons are likely to obtain a competence.

Kind and generous men will be esteemed.

We should venerate wise and good men.

He prudently avoided idle and vicious persons.

The butcher has some good and some indifferent beef.

This farmer and grazier owns two large and three small farms.

We will sing the first and second verses of the nineteenth psalm.

You must buy five or six oranges for the children.

This loafer is idle and miserably poor.

"I am a plain, blunt man."

Alfred was a brave, wise, and virtuous prince.

Truth is fair and artless, simple and sincere, uniform and consistent.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Industrious and economical persons are likely to obtain a competence.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*And* is an additive conjunction, and connects *industrious* and *economical*. Rule.—*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect similar parts of speech.

Logical synthesis.

*Industrious and economical persons are likely*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*To obtain a competence*—Transitive infinitive predicate.



Our clergyman is a good and faithful preacher.

A being, infinitely wise and good, will not unnecessarily afflict his creatures.

We arrived at our homes, wet, weary, and hungry.

Having become old and infirm, they determined to reside with a son or a daughter.

The youth escaped many snares by avoiding dissipated and vicious company.

This diligent and abstemious student determined to become learned and honorable.

Revenge is the luxury of a weak and pitiful mind.

The laborer is sick, and not indolent.

The pleurisy is a severe, and also a dangerous disease.

This merchant is solvent, and perhaps rich.

The conduct of this man appears to be evil, and only evil.

This benevolent man labors to be useful, and not wealthy.

“Liberal, not lavish, is kind nature’s hand.”

As well as.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Our representative in congress is honest, as well as able.

The apprentice being vicious, as well as idle, was sent home to his parents.

The president’s cabinet is able, as well as harmonious.

Boys should endeavor to become good, as well as wise men.

A preacher of the gospel might well aim to be sympathetic, as well as elegant and argumentative. A cold, didactic manner is an imposition on the sympathetic nature of man.

Both—and; *or* and *nor*. Either—or; neither—nor.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The stranger is both lame and blind.

The stranger is lame and blind both.

The stranger is either lame or blind.

The stranger is neither lame nor blind.

The style of this author is both correct and beautiful.

The style of this author is neither correct nor beautiful.

A man neither lame nor blind, old nor decrepit, sits begging by the wayside.

A man both lame and blind, old and decrepit, sits begging by the wayside.

The class being neither studious nor orderly, made but little improvement.

My class deserves praise for being both studious and orderly.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING ADJECTIVES, ONE OR MORE OF WHICH IS ACCOMPANIED BY A PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE OR AN INSENTENSIC PREDICATE.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Men are wicked by nature, and corrupt in practice.

This railroad is convenient to the public, and profitable to the stockholders.

Your horse is beautiful in form and color, as well as fast and easy in his gaits.

Our physician is easy in his manners, as well as skilful in his profession.

The professor is indefatigable in teaching, and likewise strict in discipline.

This officer was wise and prudent in council, as well as brave and skilful in action.

This officer was neither wise and prudent in council, nor brave and skilful in action.

The apples are large and fair, as well as excellent in flavor.

This speculator was prudent in buying property, and lucky in selling it.

My agent is diligent in collecting moneys, and prompt in paying them over.

Refined persons are pleasant and agreeable at home, and affable in company.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Men are wicked and corrupt*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*By nature—In practice*—Prepositional phrases.

Our pastor being deficient in literature, and dull in his manner of preaching, is not acceptable to the congregation.

To censorious persons, strangers are generally ugly or insignificant in aspect, or uncouth or haughty in manner.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING VERBS.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect similar parts of speech.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

William can write and cipher.

The lad can hop, skip, and jump.

Jesse caught and saddled the pony.

Will you read and spell your lesson?

I can spell and read, write and cipher.

This broker buys and sells bank notes, as well as coin.

The patient rests and sleeps quietly.

How the ship rises and sinks with the waves!

The fat man puffed and blowed like a porpoise.

We can walk and ride by turns.

You can go and come at pleasure.

The lady plays and sings with taste.

Hope cheers and animates the heart.

Enterprising men encounter and surmount difficulties.

The tide ebbs and flows at regular periods.

We fear and tremble for their safety.

The company is armed and equipped for active service.

Animals grow and fatten by good feeding.

The plot was discovered and disclosed.

The pupil of the eye dilates and contracts under the influence of various degrees of light.

The clouds thicken and lower.

William can read and write, as well as cipher.

#### Logical synthesis.

*William can write and cypher*—Intransitive predication.

William can both write and cipher.  
 You can walk or ride.  
 I shall neither walk nor ride. I can not go.  
 Your horse can both pace and rack.  
 The lad neither equivocates nor evades.  
 I must either buy or borrow a plough.  
 The finder neither deserved nor obtained a reward.  
 This gentleman neither edits nor publishes a paper.  
 You must either reject or admit these principles.  
 I neither reject nor admit these principles. I view them  
 with indifference.

This independent student neither expected nor desired assistance from friends.

Children should both reverence and obey their parents.  
 The senator either proposed or advocated the measure.  
 You have neither learned nor recited a lesson to-day.  
 I have both learned and recited a lesson to-day.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as, CONNECTING ADVERBS.*

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as, connect similar parts of speech.*

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The yacht sails beautifully and rapidly.  
 Your horse moves easily and gracefully.  
 Your work shall be well and expeditiously done.  
 Having diligently and carefully examined the subject, my  
 opinion in regard to it will be likely to remain unchanged.  
 The heat became more and more intense.  
 My daughter has been long and dangerously ill.  
 The insects moved up and down, hither and thither.  
 Having slowly and cautiously approached the flower, he  
 placed his hat over the butterfly.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The yacht sails beautifully and rapidly*—Intransitive predication.

We can accomplish the work by laboring diligently and perseveringly.

Drive the horses moderately and carefully, and not so dashingly.

The surgeon performed the operation dexterously, as well as skilfully.

Will the journal be published weekly or semi-weekly ?

The journal will be published both weekly and semi-weekly.

The printing was neither neatly nor expeditiously done.

The payments may be made annually or semi-annually.

The doctrine is deleterious, viewed either religiously or morally.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect similar parts of speech.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This subject was fully discussed in and about Boston.

That youth can swim under, as well as upon, the water.

Over and above these claims, I hold a note against him, amounting to five hundred dollars.

The senator advanced an argument for, and not against, the measure.

Many persons in and also out of the church, hold these erroneous opinions.

Many persons in and likewise out of the church, hold these erroneous opinions.

Many persons in and out of the church too, hold these erroneous opinions.

Few persons either in or out of the church hold these erroneous opinions.

The goods will be sold at or below the regular price.

They left the city on or about the 15th of August.

Logical synthesis.

*In and about Boston*—Prepositional phrase.

My friend resides neither at nor below Annapolis.  
The water is deep both above and below the rapids.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING SENTENSIC  
PREDICATES.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Charles reads well, and writes legibly.

Charles reads well, and writes a good hand.

Andrew ploughed the field, as well as sowed the grain.

I ploughed the field yesterday, and will sow the grain to-day.

We should do justly, love mercy, and walk humbly with God.

The farmer prepares his ground, and plants his corn in the spring, and harvests the crop in the fall.

This gentleman sold his farm, and purchased real estate in the city.

This merchant resides in New Jersey, and carries on business in New York.

Our professors love learning, and infuse the love of learning into their pupils.

I will write a letter immediately, and dispatch it to my friend.

I saw one man driving cattle, and heard an other calling hogs.

We may sympathize with persons in distress, and rejoice with them in prosperity.

The family must rent a farm, or remove to a new country.

The poor fellow could neither pay the fine, nor give security for its payment.

We will either ride to the city, or walk to the village.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Charles reads well, and writes legibly*—Intransitive predication.

*Charles reads well, and writes a good hand*—Intransitive and transitive predication.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as,* CONNECTING  
PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES.

RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as,* connect similar structures.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This station is above my reach and beyond my deserts.

The goods will be sold below the regular price and, it may be, at considerable sacrifice.

I saw this man at the church, at the hotel, and at the theatre.

We were confounded by his volubility, and not by his strong reasons.

The witness saw the prisoner at the grocery, and also at the market.

Candles are made of tallow and spermaceti, and likewise of beeswax.

In him, and in him only, we have life.

You can repose confidence in John, and in Charles too.

From this measure, benefits will accrue to the merchant, and perhaps to the manufacturer.

Facts may be transmitted by tradition, as well as by history.

The lad is fond of books, as well as of sport.

“Unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them.”

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*This station is above my reach and beyond my deserts.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*And* is an additive conjunction, and connects *Above my reach* and *Beyond my deserts*. Rule.—*And, or, nor, and as well as* connect similar structures.

Logical synthesis.

*This station is*—Intransitive predication.

*Above my reach*—Prepositional phrase.

*And*—Additive conjunction.

*Beyond my deserts*—Prepositional phrase.



In this work, the language is discussed both by parts of speech and by structures.

I shall make my journey by stage or on horseback.

This merchant will purchase goods neither in New York nor in Boston.

We were charmed with the beauty of the country, and with the music of the birds.

The lady will accomplish the journey in company with her brother, or under the protection of a trusty friend.

My son is unwilling to pursue his studies either at this academy, or at any other school deficient in good government.

"I am a debtor both to the Greeks and to the Barbarians, both to the wise and to the unwise."

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING ADVERBS  
AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect adverbs and prepositional phrases.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The community are laboring industriously and in commendable harmony.

The preacher spoke eloquently and with apparent sincerity.

Proceed on your way circumspectly and with careful step.

The bill was carried through the several formalities of legislation deliberately, and not with unbecoming haste.

A speaker should utter words distinctly, and likewise with correct quantity and proper intonation.

The merchant sold his stock of goods readily, and perhaps to responsible customers.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The community are laboring industriously*—Intransitive predication.

*And*—Additive conjunction.

*In commendable harmony*—Prepositional phrase.

The travelers will spend some time here, as well as at Saratoga Springs.

This author composes correctly, as well as with surprising facility.

The result of the contest is uncertain both here and in some other states.

I will meet you there or on 'Change.

The job was not executed properly, nor within the time specified in the contract.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING PARTICIPIAL  
PREDICATES.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect similar structures.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I heard a lady crying and lamenting.

The lads came along hopping, skipping, and jumping.

Praising and rejoicing, they spent the day.

This gentleman having settled his affairs and visited his aged parents, left his country for a distant clime.

The oxen being fully grown, and being well broken, ought to command a high price.

Having been faithful, and being innately righteous, they stand accepted.

I have seen this sprig of the aristocracy carousing with low associates, as well as playing at billiards with men of high standing.

In that day, carnally minded men will be found scheming for transitory good, and not looking for the kingdom come.

Being a good mechanic, and being also a skilful manager, he can hardly fail to accumulate property.

The horse being beautiful in form and color, and being likewise remarkable for fast trotting, was sold, in Boston, for a great price.

A boy rambling in the meadow in search of wild flowers,

and perhaps humming a tune with a merry heart, trod on a serpent concealed in the grass.

My son being skilful in husbandry, and being likewise industrious and economical, you need not fear to sell him a tract of land on credit.

Having a good intellect, and being also studious and regular in his habits, he is certain to become a respectable scholar.

Having paid the debt or secured its payment, he was released from durance.

This preacher's converts appear to be indifferent Christians, neither seeking good ardently, nor avoiding evil carefully.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as, CONNECTING GERUNDIVE  
PREDICATES, AND NOUNS AND GERUNDIVE  
PREDICATES.*

#### RULES OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as, connect similar structures.*

*And, or nor and as well as, connect nouns and gerundive predicates.*

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Walking and riding are healthful exercises.

Sleeping too much and working too little are faults of persons called indolent.

Praying sincerely and swearing profanely cannot be practiced by the same individual.

Preaching the gospel and practicing law are thought, by some, to be incompatible employments.

The one's being taken and the other's being left will arise from the difference in the moral conditions of the two.

His being sick and his being friendless originated alike from dissipated habits.

His being a farmer and my being a physician need not prevent our mutual friendship.

Close thinking, as well as much reading, is necessary in searching for religious truth.

The law of God forbids lying and profane swearing, as well as bearing false witness, and disobedience to parents.

Exposure to rain, and sleeping in damp sheets, were the causes of my indisposition.

The traveler was careful to avoid getting wet, and sleeping in damp sheets.

Reading, and not spelling, is our next exercise.

Shall fishing or hunting be the order of the day?

Neither editing a paper nor practicing surgery is adapted to a man of timid heart.

Exposure to rain, or sleeping in damp sheets, was the cause of my indisposition.

Neither exposure to rain, nor sleeping in damp sheets, was the cause of my indisposition.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect similar structures.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

These savages live by fishing and by hunting beaver.

The students were admonished for going so far from the academy, and for making too much noise.

During our voyage, we whiled away our time in reading, in writing a journal, and in studying navigation.

The old gentleman amused the children by recounting his adventures, as well as by telling stories.

This young man took delight in being odd and in teasing his companions.

The lads gained access to the garden without being injured by accident, and without being seen by the gardener.

This young scholar recoiled from becoming a physician, and especially from becoming a surgeon.

My friend gained his estate neither by grinding the faces of the poor, nor by dealing in contraband goods.

I can raise the proposed amount by selling a farm or by mortgaging some city property.

Some persons expect to gain the favor of God by observing external ordinances, and not chiefly by heartily obeying his commandments.

The hands may spend the day either in making fence or in planting potatoes.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as*, CONNECTING PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES AND PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as*, connect prepositional phrases and prepositional gerundive predicates.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The pupil was punished for idleness and for whispering.

This broker accumulated a large fortune by shaving notes and by speculation.

The emperor traveled through his dominions without a guard, and without being recognized by any of his subjects.

Our teacher is censurable for being late at school, and for negligence in dress.

The bishop cautioned the preachers against being slack in administering the discipline, as well as against negligence in preparing their sermons.

The culprit was condemned both for theft, and for being concerned in a rebellion.

A clerk deserves to be discharged from employment for habitual inattention to business, or for being impudent to customers.

This excellent youth was never censured at school for violating a rule, nor for negligence in study.

This politician has gained his reputation neither by courting popular favor, nor by dishonorable submission to men in authority.

*And, or, nor, AND as well as,* CONNECTING INFINITIVE  
PREDICATES.

RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, and as well as,* connect similar structures.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Charles is able to read, write, and cipher.

I have determined to sell my farm, and purchase a steam-boat.

The teacher, at length, induced his refractory pupil to submit to the discipline of the school, and to attend to his studies.

For so gross a violation of order, the student ought to be reprimanded by the president, and be expelled from the institution.

Will you be so good as to be silent, and hear me read a chapter?

The Lord Jesus Christ commanded his disciples to tarry at Jerusalem, and wait for the promise of the Father.

The young man resolved to acquire knowledge, and to become a useful citizen.

The stranger was impelled by hunger to call at a farmhouse, and beg for something to eat.

The youth has come to work, and not to play.

Benevolent persons visit the poor, to aid them in distress, and also to condole with them in their bereavements.

The villagers went to the donation party, to enjoy a social meeting, as well as to aid the clergyman.

"Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof."

I am unable to walk to the village, or to ride to the city.

The young man has no decision. He cannot make up his mind to advance nor to retreat.

To go and come would occupy two days.

It would occupy two days to go and come.

To see the falls, and not to partake of a dinner at the hotel, is the object of my excursion.



To love God, and to do good to men, are the leading purposes of every Christian.

To purchase a tolerable farm, or to build a comfortable house, requires a considerable amount of money.

To write a good hand, to spell well, and to construct sentences accurately, should be the aim of every student.

To teach young pupils skilfully, and to govern them judiciously, is a difficult task.

To do good, and to eschew evil, should be the endeavor of every moral agent.

OBS. General usage sanctions the use of *aim*, *task*, and *endeavor* in the singular number, when applied as in the last three examples. The verb agrees in number and person, not with the united nominative which precedes, but with the nominative after it.

*And, or, nor, neither, else, AND otherwise, CONNECTING PREDICATIONS.*

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor, neither, else, and otherwise, connect predications.*

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

"Praise waiteth for thee, O God, in Zion, and unto thee shall the vow be performed."

"Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean."

"The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament showeth his handiwork."

"O Lord my God, I cried unto thee, and thou hast healed me."

"Deliver me out of the mire, and let me not sink."

"Thy kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and thy dominion endureth throughout all generations."

His sentiments are sublime, and his words are beautiful.

"Young heads are giddy, and young hearts are warm."

We must study diligently; or we shall disappoint our parents in their reasonable expectations.

The ladies would not drink wine; nor would the gentlemen drink brandy.



“Let not your heart be troubled ; neither let it be afraid.”

“Our heart is not turned back ; neither have our steps declined from the way.”

“Be not thou envious against evil men ; neither desire to be with them.”

I must have my father's consent ; else we cannot proceed.

“Repent ; or else I will come quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of my mouth.”

I have not the means ; otherwise I would assist you.

OBS. *Neither* is used for *nor*, and *else* and *otherwise* for *or*, or in conjunction with *or*, in connecting predications.

THE ALTERNATIVE CORRESPONDIVE CONJUNCTION *whether*.

The alternative correspondive conjunction *whether* expresses an alternative of whatever may be connected by *or*, with which it corresponds.

#### RULES OF SYNTAX.

*Whether* connects predications.

*Whether* connects insentensic predicates and predications.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I cannot tell whether I shall go or not.

Whether I shall remove to the western country, or remain permanently in my native state, I have not yet determined.

I do not know whether the soil is adapted to grain or to grass.

The students have not been able to determine whether their new professor is strict or slack in discipline.

I hope to learn soon whether I am to complete my classical studies, or go into business.

The lad burned his fingers, in determining whether the iron was hot or cold.

Not being certain whether he should take the left or the right hand road, he went to a farmhouse near by to inquire.

*Further, furthermore, moreover, also, likewise, besides, again, AND more,* CONNECTING PREDICATIONS, OR  
CONTINUING THE SUBJECT.

These, conjunctions, except *more*, are used with or without *and*, to connect predications, or to continue the subject. *And* is also used simply to continue a subject.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*Further, furthermore, moreover, also, likewise, besides, and again,* connect predications, or continue the subject.

Obs. *Also, likewise, and too*, have already been illustrated under preceding heads, in their application with *and* to the parts of speech, and to the several classes of predicates.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I shall proceed, further, to advance a few reasons in support of this view of the subject.

And further, let us consider the probable event.

"Furthermore, we have had fathers of the flesh, and we gave them reverence."

He agreed positively to purchase my farm; and furthermore, he bargained for my stock and surplus produce.

"Moreover, the word of the Lord came to Jeremiah."

"The judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether; moreover, by them is thy servant warned."

"Moreover, he sprinkled likewise with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the sanctuary."

"And God made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: he made the stars also."

"Wise men die; likewise the fool and the brutish man perish."

Besides, the demand is unjust; and more, you know it to be so.

Besides, you do not know the fate of your friend.

I have not visited my native country for twenty years ; besides, I never expect to see it again.

“ And again, I will put my trust in him.”

“ Again, he limiteth a certain day.”

#### THE ADDITIVE CONJUNCTION *that*.

*That* is an adjective pronoun, when used simply to point out a noun, or to represent a noun or a pronoun. When *that* is used to represent a part of a sentence that follows, and at the same time serves as a connective, it is a pronominal additive conjunction, and bears syntactical relations accordingly.

#### RULES OF SYNTAX.

*That* connects predications.

*That* connects insentensic predicates and predications.

*That* connects prepositional phrases and predications.

Obs. *That* is sometimes omitted in composition ; but, in nearly all cases, it is better to express it.

#### *That* CONNECTING PREDICATIONS.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I go to school, *that* I may acquire an education.

I stopped a moment, *that* my brother might tie my shoestring.

I hate deception so heartily, *that* I cannot respect a deceptious person.

My friend has met with such success in several speculations, *that* he has determined to risk his whole fortune on a new adventure.

That we may please God, and respect ourselves, we should do right.

That we may not want bread in old age, we should be industrious and economical in the prime of life.

We should be industrious and economical in the prime of life, *that* we may not want bread in old age.

Some of my pupils are so inconsiderate, *that* they will not study.

"No man was so poor that he could not make restitution."

The difference is such that you need not fail to perceive it.

"So run that ye may obtain."

"My son, be wise, and make my heart glad, that I may answer him that reproacheth me."

The teachers hoped that their pupils would bear a thorough examination.

The young gentleman feared that you were displeased at his remarks.

The chairman of the committee said that the report would soon be ready.

"Master, we know that thou art true, and teachest the way of God in truth; neither carest thou for any man."

"And Abraham said unto God, 'O that Ishmael might live before thee!'"

Obs. In the last sentence, *I pray thee*, is understood after *O*.

### *That* CONNECTING INSENTENSIC PREDICATES AND PREDICATIONS.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Having formed the opinion that a particular course of conduct is wrong, we should not be induced to pursue it.

The captain fearing that a storm was approaching, took in sail, that he might be prepared for the worst.

My son being so sick that we could not pursue our journey, we turned aside to a farmhouse.

This broker being such a sharper that we cannot safely deal with him, we shall do well by shunning his office.

His being obsequious that he might gain the favor of his superior officers, excited their contempt.

The preacher cautioned his hearers against complaining that the dispensations of Providence are too severe.

The youth was encouraged to read good books, that he might acquire knowledge, and fortify his morals against evil example.

The president having declared that he would serve but one term, declined being a candidate for re-election.

This unfortunate man was sustained in his afflictions, by believing that happiness awaited him in a future state.

We have reason to fear that some disaster has befallen the travelers.

*That* CONNECTING PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES AND  
PREDICATIONS.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

We submit philosophically to present adversity, in the hope that better circumstances await us.

The Jews were rendered more observant of hospitality, by the circumstance that Abraham entertained angels unawares.

The general left his family with a vague apprehension that he should never return.

Many persons are deterred from attempting much in life, by the fear that they may fail of success.

4. THE ADVERSITIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

An *adversitive conjunction* is used to introduce a sentiment, a fact, or a word, in opposition to what has preceded. The words of this class are,

But,	notwithstanding,	howbeit,
yet,	still,	yea,
nevertheless,	however,	nay.

*Yet* is sometimes used with *and* or *nor*, to continue a subject, or to connect predications, or similar parts of speech.

RULE OF SYNTAX.

Adversitive conjunctions connect predications, or continue the subject.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I will call ; but I cannot stay to dine.

I will call ; yet I cannot stay to dine.

I will call ; nevertheless, I cannot stay to dine.

I will call ; howbeit, I cannot stay to dine.

I will call ; I can not, however, stay to dine.

I am displeased with his treatment ; still I am unwilling to renounce his friendship.

“ Riches profit not in the day of wrath ; but righteousness delivereth from death.”

“ All the brethren of the poor do hate him : how much more do his friends go far from him ? he pursueth them with words ; yet they are wanting to him.”

The lad is ignorant ; nevertheless, he avoids instruction.

I have hoed my garden several times ; notwithstanding, it is full of weeds.

I traveled extensively in search of a place for a permanent residence ; I could not, however, light on a desirable spot.

You have so high an opinion of your plantation, I fear that you will ask too much for it ; I will, nevertheless, call and view it in a few days.

The people were not pleased with the preacher ; they, notwithstanding, paid him the salary according to agreement.

“ Behold, I show you a mystery : ‘ We shall not all sleep ; but we shall all be changed.’ ”

“ Be not overcome of evil ; but overcome evil with good.”

“ I am crucified with Christ : nevertheless I live ; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me.”

He requested an answer ; nay, he urged it.

The robber asked me for my purse ; nay, he demanded it.

“ Therein do I rejoice ; yea, and therein will I rejoice.”

“ And others had trial of cruel mockings and scourgings ; yea, moreover, of bonds and imprisonments.”

“ A wise man is strong ; yea, a man of knowledge increaseth strength.”

“ Do we then make void the law through faith ? God forbid ; yea, we establish the law.”

“ Yea, young children despised me ; I arose, and they spake against me.”

“ We may be playful, and yet innocent ; grave, and yet corrupt.”



ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES RELATING TO *but*.

*But* is used alone or in conjunction with *not*, *not only*, *not merely*, *even*, *also*, or *likewise*, to connect similar parts of speech, nouns and gerundive predicates, prepositional phrases, prepositional phrases and prepositional gerundive predicates, similar insentensic predicates, and predications.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

*But* connects similar parts of speech.

*But* connects nouns and gerundive predicates.

*But* connects prepositional phrases.

*But* connects adverbs and prepositional phrases.

*But* connects prepositional phrases and prepositional gerundive predicates.

*But* CONNECTING SIMILAR PARTS OF SPEECH.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

My son, but not my daughter, has gone to France.

Not my son, but my daughter has gone to France.

We need a pair of horses, but not a yoke oxen.

We need not only a pair of horses, but also a yoke of oxen.

We need not merely a pair of horses, but also a yoke of oxen.

Some physicians dislike the study, but not the practice, of medicine.

Disliking not only the study, but the practice, of medicine, he relinquished the profession, and turned his attention to law and politics.

He demanded not merely an adjustment of our accounts, but also immediate payment of the balance against me.

Some diseases are severe, but not immediately dangerous.

Some diseases are not only severe, but also dangerous.

This stranger is ugly in person, but elegant in manners.

This infamous traffic was deemed not only excusable, but even honorable.



Enterprising men not only encounter, but overcome, difficulties.

The boat moves beautifully, but not rapidly.

The patient convalesces slowly, but surely.

Many persons not only in, but also out of the church, hold these erroneous opinions.

The water is deep not above, but below, the bridge.

The water is deep not only above, but also below, the bridge.

*But* CONNECTING PREPOSITIONAL STRUCTURES, AND  
ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I saw this Spaniard not at the church, but at the theatre.

I saw this Spaniard not only at the church, but also at the theatre.

We can travel not only in the day, but also in the night.

"Jesus answered and said, 'This voice came not because of me, but for your sakes.'"

Having failed not only in business, but likewise in resolution, he lost all interest in terrestrial affairs, and gave himself up to despair.

He was a friend not in word merely, but also in deed.

This is a question not of doctrine merely, but of morals also.

The orator spoke not only eloquently, but also with commendable brevity.

The preacher was censured not only for being slack in administering the discipline, but also for negligence in preparing for the pulpit.

This company is engaged not only in trade, but likewise in manufacturing railroad iron.

The prodigal son was received not only with kindness, but even with cordiality and joy.

"And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power."

*But* CONNECTING SIMILAR INSENTENSIC PREDICATES,  
AND NOUNS AND GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The professor recommended not only much reading, but also close thinking.

My companion in travel suggested not only taking notes, but likewise their preparation for the press.

I have determined not only to sell my plantation, but also to remove to Texas.

My father advised me not only to avoid bad associates, but also to consort with persons of high and noble aim.

The rules of the society forbid not only the use of tobacco and alcoholic drinks, but gambling of every description.

I have determined not only to go to Australia, but even to go immediately.

The class determined not merely to avoid censure from the examining committee, but to command their highest encomiums.

Obs. The participial predicates are not connected by *but*, inasmuch as two opposite conditions or actions, expressed in this form, can not be made to refer to the same person or thing.

*But* CONNECTING PREDICATIONS.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This benevolent man not only devised liberal plans for doing good ; but he also carried them into effect.

That wicked man was not only indicted for arson by the grand jury ; but he was likewise proved to be guilty of the crime, in the subsequent trial.

The bishop not only preaches evangelical doctrines, and a code of pure morals ; but he also lives in accordance with them.

Our teacher not merely advises his pupils to be studious ; but he compels them to be so by severe tasking and exact recitation.

My friend not only proffered aid ; but he even urged me to accept it.

## 5. THE CAUSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

A *causative conjunction* is used to introduce a predication expressing a reason or a cause. The words of this class are,

As,	since	inasmuch as,	wherefore,
because,	for,	forasmuch as,	seeing that.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Causative conjunctions connect predications, or continue the subject.

*Because* connects insentensic predicates and predications.

When predications are connected by *that* or by a causative, an adverbial, or a conditional conjunction, it is placed immediately before the dependant predication, which may stand either as the former or the latter clause of the sentence. The conjunction connects the predications, whether it stands between them or before them both.

## CAUSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING PREDICATIONS.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

We respect his opinions, as he is a wise and prudent man.

As he is a wise and prudent man, we respect his opinions.

We respect his opinions, because he is a wise and prudent man.

Because he is a wise and prudent man, we respect his opinions.

We respect his opinions, since he is a wise and prudent man.

Since he is a wise and prudent man, we respect his opinions.

We respect his opinions, inasmuch as he is a wise and prudent man.

Inasmuch as he is a wise and prudent man, we respect his opinions.

We respect his opinions ; for he is a wise and prudent man.

"Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, and the evidence of things not seen; for by it the elders obtained a good report."

"Pray for us; for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things wishing to live honestly."

"We love him, because he first loved us."

Since you have come, you would do well to remain.

"But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood."

"Because it is written, 'Be ye holy; for I am holy.'"

"Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves likewise with the same mind."

"Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling sure."

"Wherefore I will not be negligent to put you always in remembrance of these things."

"Wherefore, beloved, seeing that ye look for such things, be diligent, that ye may be found of him in peace, without spot and blameless."

"O give thanks unto the Lord; for he is good: for his mercy endureth for ever."

"But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings."

*Because* CONNECTING INSENTENSIC PREDICATES  
AND PREDICATIONS.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Having called at a gin-palace because an acquaintance urged him to stop, he took a little gin, because he was urged to do so.

Paying one's debts because one can not help it, is no evidence of one's honesty.

Doing good because one loves to do it, is a mark of innate benevolence.

There is no pleasure in studying because one is compelled to study.

## 6. THE INFERENTIAL CONJUNCTIONS.

An *Inferential conjunction* is used to introduce a predication expressing an inference. The words of this class are,

Therefore,            then,            however,            so.

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

Inferential conjunctions connect predications, or continue the subject.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Man is a sinner ; hence, he has need of a Saviour.

Man is a sinner ; he has, therefore, need of a Saviour.

You acknowledge that man is a sinner ; then, you must admit that he has need of a Saviour.

On the whole, I do not think that the measure is a good one ; hence, I cannot give it my sanction.

On the whole, I do not think that the measure is a good one ; so, I cannot give it my sanction.

The honest lawyer said to his client, ' You admit that your cause is unjust ; then, why do you expect me to undertake it ?'

I could not sell my tobacco for a good price last summer ; so, I kept it over.

You know that alcohol will undermine your health, ruin your reputation, and beggar your family ; why will you not, therefore, abandon its use ?

Every human virtue should be cultivated with diligence : prudence is a human virtue ; therefore, prudence should be cultivated with diligence.

" Therefore, leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on to perfection."

" Seeing then that we have a great high priest, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession."

" Wisdom is the principal thing ; therefore, get wisdom ; and with all thy gettings get understanding."

## 7. THE ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS.

An *adverbial conjunction* partakes of the nature of an adverb and a conjunction. As a conjunction, it connects structures, and as an adverb it qualifies the predicative words in the structures connected. The words of this class are,

As,	when,	whence,
before,	whenever,	whither,
after,	while,	how,
since,	whilst,	why,
till,	where,	wherefore,
until,	wherever,	whereby.

*After, before, when, till, or until*, carries the mind back or forward to some point indicated by one of the members of the sentence. By their aid future time may be expressed by a verb in the present tense; and prior-perfect time, by a verb in the indefinite perfect tense.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, and gerundives.

Adverbial conjunctions connect predications.

Adverbial conjunctions connect insentensic predicates and predications.

Adverbial conjunctions connect prepositional phrases and predications.

Prepositional phrases expressing time, place, or occasion, may be connected with predications by an adverbial conjunction of like nature. In all such cases, however, the prepositional phrase combined with the conjunction, might appropriately be taken as the conjunction. A conjunction thus formed may connect predications, or insentensic predicates and predications. If the prepositional phrase and the conjunction are thus taken together, the last rule of syntax is useless.



## ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING PREDICATIONS.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

We had a fine prospect of the falls, as we were crossing the river below them.

As we were crossing the river below the falls, we had a full view of them.

As the queen was passing by, we had a full view of her person.

Before I left England, I had some intimation of my father's purpose to remove to America.

Before we left this city, we purchased tickets for breakfast, to be had on the road after about two hours' ride. The agent sent forward our several orders by telegraph; and when we arrived, we found it filled to the letter. We were allowed twenty minutes for discussing the good things before us.

After he had completed his collegiate course, he took charge of our academy, and commenced the study of divinity.

After I came to this country, I began to hope for prosperity.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*We had a fine prospect of the falls, as we were crossing the river below them.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*As* is an adverbial conjunction. *As* an adverb, it qualifies *had* in the former predication, and *were crossing* in the latter. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs. *As* a conjunction, it connects predications. Rule.—Adverbial conjunctions connect predications.

## Logical synthesis.

*We had a fine prospect*—Transitive predication.

*Of the falls*—Prepositional phrase.

*As*—Adverbial conjunction.

*We were crossing the river*—Transitive predication.

*Below them*—Prepositional phrase.



These sections were added to the bill, after it had been reported to the house by the committee.

"Now I tell you before it comes, that when it has come to pass, ye may believe that I am he."

Since my son removed to that country, he has prospered beyond expectation.

I have not seen an individual from my native state, since I left it.

"All the days of my appointed time will I wait, till my change comes."

"Verily, verily, I say unto thee, 'The cock shall not crow, till thou hast denied me thrice.'"

"And he called his ten servants, and delivered them ten pounds, and said unto them, 'Occupy till I come.'"

The Indians remained in ambush, until our little army came almost into their midst.

"The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, until Shiloh comes."

"In open prospect nothing bounds the eye,  
Until the earth seems joined unto the sky."

"Where wast thou, when I laid the foundations of the earth?"

When he came, he made an apology for detaining us so long. I will mention this subject, when I write to him.

"Her husband is known in the gates, when he sitteth among the elders of the land."

"And they say unto her, 'Woman, why weepest thou?' She saith unto them, 'Because they have taken away my Lord, and I know not where they have laid him.'"

"When I wake, I am still with thee."

"I will sing praises unto my God, while I have any being."

"She riseth also while it is yet night, and giveth meat to her household, and a portion to her maidens."

While we study to gain knowledge, the mind improves in strength.

“ While ye have the light, believe in the light, that ye may be children of the light.”

Whilst the regiment was passing, we noticed the uniforms of each company.

“ Remember now thy creator in the days of thy youth, when the evil days come not, nor the years draw nigh, when thou shalt say, ‘ I have no pleasure in them.’ ”

When he awoke in the morning, he could not tell where he was, until he recognized the servants.

“ And Abimelech said, ‘ Behold, my land is before thee, dwell where it pleaseth thee.’ ”

This preacher is beloved wherever he travels.

Wherever this epidemic prevails, it supersedes every other acute disease.

“ Whither I go ye know, and the way ye know.”

Have you learned whence the smoke proceeds?

How this farmer can pay his debts, his croaking neighbors can not imagine.

Christian men learn from the revelation from God how they may please him, and attain to everlasting life.

We can not imagine why he rejected so reasonable a proposition.

Why Israel was rejected for a time, we may learn by consulting the writings of St. Paul.

This ingenious mechanic made a valuable invention, and a kind friend furnished the means whereby a patent was secured.

#### ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING INSENTENSIC PREDICATES AND PREDICATIONS.

##### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Having had a fine prospect of the falls as we were crossing the river below them, their aspect is still vivid in my recollection.

Improving the moments as they fly, is called taking time by the forelock.

In discharging all our obligations of duty as they rise, we live up to the dignity of human nature.

We ought to improve the moments as they fly.

Having arranged all my business before I left home, I can be absent for some time without anxiety.

Calling upon people before they are up in the morning, is generally inexpedient.

By eating melons before they are ripe, we incur some hazard.

The practice of going to church after the service has commenced, should be avoided.

We were anxious to see certain friends once more, before we left the country.

My son having prospered in business since he went to that state, has acquired a considerable fortune.

My father having waited for us till he could wait no longer, left us to make the best of our way to the village alone.

The savages having remained in ambush until our little army came almost into their midst, raised a hideous cry, and made on us a furious attack.

My neighbor failed to make a good crop, through being sick until it was rather too late to sow and plant.

The people having learned when the president would pass through the village, came in great numbers from the neighboring country, to see him.

Being displeased whenever this subject is mentioned, his friends forbear alluding to it even in the most distant manner.

By attending to business while we are in the prime of life, we may secure a competence for old age.

This gentleman was in the habit of visiting the places of public resort, while he remained in the city.

The gentleman not being able to discover whence this malicious article proceeded, holds the editor responsible for its publication.

"I know not whence ye are."

Abraham went out not knowing whither he went.

Not knowing how he should conduct his affairs under these difficult circumstances, he applied to a friend for advice.

We insisted upon his declaring why he entertained so unfavorable an opinion of this measure.

The assembly was confused, the greater part not knowing wherefore they had come together.

This young farmer was aiming to acquire the means whereby he might purchase a tract of land in some of the western states.

To give the reasons why this course should be pursued, would occupy too much time.

ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING PREPOSITIONAL  
PHRASES AND PREDICATIONS.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

On some occasion before we became particularly acquainted, I heard you say that you had practiced medicine.

On some evening after you come, we will visit the museum.

This great work was undertaken at a time when money could be borrowed in Europe.

There is an eminent academy in the village where I reside.

I am a proprietor in the office whence this paper is issued.

It is probable that these people will return to the country whence they came.

Residing in a neighborhood where religion was generally neglected, the family attended public worship in a village at an inconvenient distance.

In all the places where I spoke on this subject, I frankly expressed my opinion.

He was happy at having a prospect of that lovely land whither his steps were tending.

"And behold, I am with thee, and will keep thee in all places whither thou goest, and will bring thee again into this land."

## 8. THE COMPARATIVE ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS.

A *comparative adverbial conjunction* partakes of the nature of an adverb and a conjunction, while it likewise expresses a comparison of actions, persons, or things. The conjunctions of this class are,

*As*, ——— *as*, ——— *so*, *than*.

*As* — *as*, *as*, — *so*, and *so* — *as*, are used in pairs, the former word of each pair being a correspondve adverbial conjunction, corresponding with its fellow, and qualifying the adverb, the adjective, or the verb, falling between them.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, and gerundives.

Comparative adverbial conjunctions connect predications.

Comparative adverbial conjunctions connect insentensic predicates and predications.

*As*, *AS* — *as*, *AS* — *so*, AND *SO* — *as*, CONNECTING  
PREDICATIONS.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

You must all do as I do.

We will do as well as we can.

When we can not do as we would, we must do as well as we can.

We can easily obtain such specimens as these.

I went to China, as supercargo.

As a conjunction, it connects predications.

The stranger offered himself, as a journeyman.

I assume the statements, as facts.

The young man served in our academy, as usher.

Will God pardon such a sinner as I?

“They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.”

"But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you."

"Then I saw that wisdom excelleth folly, as far as light excelleth darkness."

"As soon as they hear me, they will bless me."

"I have rejoiced in the way of thy testimonies, as much as in all riches."

"Hath the Lord as great delight in burnt-offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the Lord?"

Philip is as tall as Henry or Augustus.

A pupil may become as wise as his teacher

My mother gave the poor blind boy as much as he.

"Then said I in my heart, 'As it happeneth to a fool, so it happeneth even unto me.'"

'And it shall be, as with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with the master.'

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*When we can not do as we would, we must do as well as we can.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*As* is a comparative adverbial conjunction. *As* an adverb it qualifies *can do* in the former predication, and *would [do]* in the latter. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs. *As* a conjunction it connects predications. Rule.—Comparative adverbial conjunctions connect predications.

*As* is a correspondive adverbial conjunction. *As* a conjunction, it corresponds with *as*. *As* an adverb, it qualifies *well*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify adverbs.

*Well* is an adverb, and qualifies *must do* in the former predication, and *can [do]* in the latter. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs.

*As* is a comparative adverbial conjunction. *As* an adverb, it qualifies *must do* in the former predication, and *can [do]* in the latter. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs. *As* a conjunction, it connects predications. Rule.—Comparative adverbial conjunctions connect predications.



"As arrows are in the hand of a mighty man, so are the children of the youth."

"Thy shoes shall be iron and brass; and as thy days, so shall thy strength be."

"As the Father hath loved me, so have I loved you."

"As the Father hath known me, even so know I the Father."

"As thou hast sent me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world."

"As four are to eight, so are eight to sixteen."

"As the heart panteth for the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God."

"As far as the east is from the west, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us."

"As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so the Lord is round about his people from henceforth even for ever."

John is not so studious as his brother.

Hemlock is not so durable as pine.

### Logical synthesis.

*When*—Adverbial conjunction.

*We can not do*—Intransitive predication.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*We would [do]*—Intransitive predication.

*We must do as well*—Intransitive predication.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*We can [do]*—Intransitive predication.

*We can easily obtain such specimens*—Transitive predication.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*These [are]*—Intransitive predication.

*They will bless me as soon*—Transitive predication.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*They hear me*—Transitive predication.

*I went*—Intransitive predication.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*Supercargo [goes]*—Intransitive predication.



*As*, *AS*——*as*, AND *SO*——*as*, CONNECTING INSENTENSIC  
PREDICATES AND PREDICATIONS.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Having done as all others had done in similar cases, he felt satisfied with his conduct.

The captain having run his boat as long as the river was navigable, laid her up for the winter in safe quarters.

He satisfied his conscience by doing as others had done in similar cases.

John being as strong and hardy as his brother, can do as much work as he.

This young man having become as learned as his old teacher, left his school, to obtain the instructions of a better scholar.

“Yea, I think it meet, as long as I am in this tabernacle, to stir you up by putting you in remembrance; knowing that shortly I must put off this tabernacle, even as our Lord Jesus Christ hath showed me.”

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Having done as all others had done in similar cases, he felt satisfied with his conduct.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*As* is a comparative adverbial conjunction. *As* an adverb, it qualifies *having done*, and *had done*. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs and participles. *As* a conjunction, it connects the participial predicate and the predication. Rule.—Comparative adverbial conjunctions connect insentensic predicates and predications.

#### Logical synthesis.

*Having done*—Intransitive participial predicate.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*All others had done*—Intransitive predication.

*He felt satisfied*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*With his conduct*—Prepositional phrase.

The lad determined not to be so idle as he had been.

“He hath died to redeem such a rebel as I.”

The agent urged the contractors to finish their several jobs as soon as possible.

The little boy hoped to be as tall as his uncle.

Can you be so unreasonable as to impose such conditions?

I spoke of the young man, as being well known in our neighborhood.

The lads beat the serpent, and left it as dead; but when they had gone, it crawled off into the grass.

*The captain laid her up*—Transitive predication.

*Having run his boat as long*—Transitive participial predicate.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*The river was navigable*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*For winter*—*In safe quarters*—Prepositional phrases.

*He satisfied his conscience*—Transitive predication.

*By doing*—Intransitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

*As*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*Others had done*—Intransitive predication.

*In similar cases*—Prepositional phrase.

#### *Than* IN ITS VARIOUS APPLICATIONS.

*Than* is used after *else*, *other*, *otherwise*, and *rather*, and after adjectives in the comparative degree. In nearly all cases an ellipsis of some word is to be supplied in the analysis and synthesis.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The history of nations is little else, than the history of oppression and outrage.

The judge had no other guide in deciding the case, than the common law.

I would rather submit than be punished.

"A good name is rather to be chosen than great riches, and loving favor rather than silver or gold."

During the winter, I have but little else to do than to feed my stock, and lay in wood for the summer.

"Receive my instruction, and not silver, and knowledge rather than choice gold; for wisdom is better than rubies."

"Thou art fairer than the children of men."

The worship of such men is no better than direct mockery.

"A good name is better than precious ointment."

"The Lord on high is mightier than the noise of many waters, yea, than the mighty waves of the sea."

"The judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether; more to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold; sweeter also than the honey and the honey-comb."

"Better is a handful with quietness, than both hands full with travail and vexation of spirit."

"Thou, through thy commandments, hath made me wiser than my enemies; for they are ever with me. I have more understanding than all my teachers; for thy testimonies are my meditation."

"Better is it that thou shouldst not vow, than that thou shouldst vow, and not pay."

This arch rogue was no sooner released from prison, than he was again engaged in committing depredations on society.

I have no greater cause of joy than hearing that my children walk in the truth.

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The history of nations is little else, than the history of oppression and outrage.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Than* is a comparative adverbial conjunction. As an adverb, it qualifies *is* in the former predication, and *is* in the latter. Rule.—Adverbs qualify verbs. As a conjunction, it connects predications.

The speaker seems to have no other aim than a display of oratory.

"For they loved the praise of men, more than the praise of God."

"It is better to trust in the Lord, than to put confidence in man."

"It is better to go to the house of mourning than to go to the house of feasting."

I can not account for the explosion by any other theory than by the one just advanced.

More men than women were there.

"Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these?"

We can not please God otherwise than by faith and obedience.

"Architecture and gardening can not otherwise entertain the mind, than by raising certain agreeable emotions or feelings."

### Logical synthesis.

*The history is little else*—Intransitive post-substantive predication.

*Of nations*—Prepositional phrase.

*Than*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*[Is the] history*—Intransitive predication.

*Of oppression and outrage*—Prepositional phrase.

*The judge had no other guide*—Transitive predication.

*In deciding the case*—Transitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

*Than*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*[Was] the common law*—Intransitive predication.

*A good name is*—Intransitive predication.

*Rather to be chosen*—Passive infinitive predicate.

*Than*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*Great riches [are]*—Intransitive predication.

*And*—Additive conjunction.—&c.

*Had* USED FOR *would* IN COMPARISON OR PREFERENCE.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

"I had rather be a door-keeper in the house of my God, than to dwell in the tents of wickedness."

"I had rather speak five words with my understanding, than ten thousand words in an unknown tongue."

"I had rather be a dog, and bay the moon, than such a Roman."

He had rather go by the evening train of cars, than by the morning boat.

The professor said that, 'We had better assist Nature in overcoming disease, than frustrate her benevolent action by too much medicine.'

I had as lieve be a mere animal as a sordid miser, or a rich man without benevolent regards to men in general.

The young man had as lieve be a farmer in Ohio, as a merchant in New York.

The young lady had as lieve stay at home as go to the party.

He said that, 'He had as lieve hoe in the garden as not.'

Logical synthesis.

*I had rather*—Intransitive predication.

[*To*] *be a door-keeper*—Intransitive post-substantive infinitive predicate.

*In the house*—*Of my God*—Prepositional phrases.

*Than*—Comparative adverbial conjunction.

*To dwell*—Intransitive infinitive predicate.

*In the tents*—*Of wickedness*—Prepositional phrases.

Obs. In the preceding examples, *had* is used for *would*. This application of *had* is convenient, and is sanctioned by reputable usage; but the regular word is generally preferable. In such cases, *would* or *had* may be regarded a principal verb, and the verb immediately following as in the infinitive mode, *to* being understood before it. In these cases, *than* or *as* connects infinitive predicates, the latter being expressed or understood.

## 9. THE CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS.

A *conditional conjunction* is used in expressing a conditional circumstance assumed as a fact, or a certainty, a future contingency, or a supposition of indefinite time. The principal conjunctions of this class are,

If, though, although, unless, lest.

*Lest* is appropriately used only in expressing future contingency.

*Except* is sometimes used in stead of *unless*; but this application of the word is not elegant.

*Provided*, or the full expression *it being provided that*, is often used instead of *if*. In such substitution, *being provided* is a present passive participle belonging to *it*, expressed or understood, as the case may be.

*That*, in expressing a wish or an ardent desire, is used not only with the indicative and potential modes, but also with the indefinite perfect tense of the subjunctive. It is also used with the subjunctive present, to express future contingency.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

Conditional conjunctions connect predications.

Conditional conjunctions connect insentensic predicates and predications.

CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING PREDICATIONS,  
ONE OF WHICH EXPRESSES A CONDITIONAL CIR-  
CUMSTANCE ASSUMED AS A FACT.

The verb in the predication expressing a conditional circumstance assumed as a fact, should be in the indicative or the subjunctive mode.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

If this man is poor, he pays his debts.

If newspapers are sometimes scurrilous, they are, nevertheless, vehicles of much information.



"If ye love me, keep my commandments."

I will aid my friend, if he wishes me to do so.

"Though our outward man perishes, the inward man is renewed day by day."

"O Lord, I will praise thee ; for, though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou dost comfort me."

This politician has supported some injudicious measures, although he has generally been prudent and patriotic.

I shall succeed in raising the necessary funds, unless money is very scarce.

You will remember the transaction, unless your memory is very treacherous.

If I did not comply with the conditions of the contract, it was because I could not.

I have never seen this celebrated cataract, though I have often been in its vicinity.

I met with much opposition, though I carried my point.

The jury can not rely upon the testimony of this witness, unless he can be proved to be a man of truth and veracity.

I shall leave home to-day, although I should prefer to remain for a week longer.

If you had called at the time appointed, you might have saved yourself from some perplexity.

"If ye had known me, ye should have known my father also."

All difficulties might be settled, if you would pursue a reasonable course.

"Unless the law had been my delights, I should then have perished in my afflictions."

I will perform the ceremony, provided your parents or your guardians have given their consent.

"O that you would altogether hold your peace."

O that I had seen my friend before he died.

I wish that I had gone, before this event had occurred.



CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING PREDICATIONS,  
ONE OF WHICH EXPRESSES A FUTURE CONTIN-  
GENCY BY THE PRESENT TENSE.

The verb in the predication expressing future contingency by the present tense, should be in the subjunctive mode.

NOTE.—For the form of the verb in the subjunctive mode, see synopsis, page 80.

SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

If he contend by civil process, he will fail to establish his claim.

I shall see my friend in a few days, and if he desires my assistance, I will cheerfully afford it.

This spirited man will maintain his rights, though he suffer loss in so doing.

“My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not.”

“Therefore, if thine enemy hunger, feed him ; if he thirst, give him drink ; for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head.”

“Though he slay me ; yet will I trust in him.”

“Although the fig-tree blossom not, and the labor of the oil fail ; yet will I rejoice in the Lord ; I will joy in the God of my salvation.”

Unless thou give a reasonable excuse, they will fine thee.

Unless he arrive in time for the boat in the morning, he will be obliged to wait until noon for the cars.

“The steps of a good man are ordered by the Lord, and he delighteth in his way. Though he fall, he shall not be utterly cast down ; for the Lord upholdeth him with his hand.”

“Despise no condition, lest it happen to be thy lot.”

“Watch the door of thy lips, lest thou utter folly.”

“If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.”

“I will not let thee go, except thou bless me.”

“For if God spared not the natural branches, take heed lest he spare not thee.”

"For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone."

"Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and ye perish by the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little."

"Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob from good to bad."

"I beseech you, therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice to God, holy, acceptable unto God."

I give my consent that he go, provided he promise to return early in the evening.

It is important that he come as soon as possible.

I will see that he be notified in due time.

#### CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING PREDICATIONS,

ONE OF WHICH EXPRESSES INDEFINITE TIME BY THE

INDEFINITE PERFECT TENSE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The conjunction is sometimes understood. In such cases the verb is placed before its nominative.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

If I were to write to this miserly man, he would not take the letter from the post office.

"In my Father's house are many mansions : if it were not so, I would have told you."

"If love were never feigned, it would appear scarce."

"If thou loved God, thou wouldst keep his commandments."

"If I were hungry, would I not tell thee?"

He would be detected, if he were an impostor.

Were I in his circumstances, I should manage my affairs very differently.

"Were death denied, all men would wish to die."

This spendthrift would waste his fortune, though he were as rich as Cræsus.

Were the boy sick, he might be excused.

"Though thou wert as strong as Sampson, thy efforts would be unavailing."

He would not be handsome, though he wore whiskers.

I would not obey this injunction, were it not a command of God.

Unless the Lord were merciful, man's condition had been still more woeful.

I wish that I were at home.

"O that he were wise, that he would consider his latter end."

I wish that my friend had more capital.

Your theory would be very well, provided man were an upright being.

I agreed to advance the requisite sum, provided satisfactory security were offered.

#### CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS CONNECTING INSENTENSIC

#### PREDICATES AND PREDICATIONS.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

This young lady, being always displeased if she is not distinguished by particular attentions, has finally become disagreeable even to her best friends.

This laborer lost the good will of his employer, by getting angry if he were desired to hasten the execution of his work.

His being idle unless the teacher is watching him, is a sure indication of baseness of mind.

George lost the good opinion not only of his teacher, but also of all the ingenuous boys of the school, by being idle unless he were constantly urged to attend to his studies.

This man renders himself ridiculous, by being offended if he is not first helped at table.

I determined to fire on the assailants, if my personal safety required the measure.

He ought to be severely punished for this outrage, unless he make ample reparation to the injured party.

This speculator on the public treasury, fearing lest he be arrested, left his country in haste for a distant clime.

The youth handled his gun carefully, fearing lest it go off, and injure himself or some other person.

This gentleman died, earnestly desiring that his son walk through life in the paths of rectitude and peace.

Parents ought not to wish that their children live without labor, or without attention to business.

*And, or, nor* AND *but*, CONNECTING PREDICATIONS  
PRECEDED BY AN OTHER CONJUNCTION.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*And, or, nor*, and *but*, connect conjunctions having a like antecedent relation.

This rule is applicable when a conjunction is repeated, or when an other conjunction is used in contrast with a predication after *and, or, nor*, or *but*. In construction, a nominative case and a conjunction should not be repeated, when an insentensic predicate will convey the same idea with precision and proper emphasis.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

My father said that I might go to school, and that he would see to feeding the stock.

I hope that I shall recover my health, and that we shall yet see good and prosperous days.

"For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth; and though, after my skin, worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God."

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*My father said that I might go to school, and that he would see to feeding the stock.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*And* is an additive conjunction, and connects *that* and *that*.  
Rule.—*And, or, nor*, and *but*, connect conjunctions having a like antecedent relation.

Having learned that his countrymen were grievously oppressed, and also that they had combined to resist their rulers, he returned to his fatherland, to assist in the patriotic movement.

As you refuse to assist me in this speculation, and as I have no other friend at hand, I must let the opportunity slip.

We eat and drink, because we are hungry and thirsty, and because eating and drinking may keep us alive.

We are willing to follow his advice, not only because he is our friend, but because he is acquainted with the whole subject.

Since Charles has come, and since the day is pleasant, we will make an excursion into the mountain.

We conversed upon this matter not only as we were sitting on the piazza, but as we were walking to the village.

And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them, when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up."

"And they said one to another, 'Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?'"

"The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth."

### Logical synthesis. .

*My father said that*—Transitive predication.

*That*—Pronominal additive conjunction.

*I might go*—Intransitive predication.

*To school*—Prepositional phrase.

*And*—Additive conjunction.

*That*—Pronominal additive conjunction.

*He would see*—Intransitive predication.

*To feeding the stock*—Transitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

Death generally comes before we are prepared for the event, or before we expect that it is at hand.

The child could not tell whence he had come, nor whither he would go.

You must remain here until I come, or until I send for you.

If you will be there, and if James and William will come also, we can make up a little party for a picnic.

This artist may fail to become eminent, not because he is not talented, but because he is attempting to embrace in his practice too many branches of the art.

"Whither shall I go from thy spirit? or whither shall I flee from thy presence?"

### THE PRONOUN RESUMED : SEE PAGE 48.

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun. It also stands for an other pronoun, or for a person or a thing without reference to a name.

Pronouns are used to prevent tiresome repetitions of nouns, and to give force and precision to language. They admit of the modifications of gender, number, and person, and bear the relations of case to other words in the structures of the language.

The gender, number, and person, are fixed, in some of the pronouns, by the form of the particular word. When this is not the case, these accidents are ascertained by some other word or words with which they stand connected, or by their reference to some person or thing clearly implied.

### CLASSIFICATION OF PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are divided into *personal*, *compound personal*, *adjective*, *possessive personal*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *interrogative adjective*, and *compound relative*.

### RULE OF SYNTAX.

Pronouns agree with the nouns or the pronouns for which they stand, in gender, number, and person.

NOTE.—In parsing, this rule need not be given in the formula.



## 1. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

A *personal pronoun* is a simple substitute, which, by its own peculiar form, shows of what person it is.

The personal pronouns are *I, thou, he, she, and it*, with their variations in declension.

NOTE.—For the declension of the personal pronouns, see page 48; and for forms of analysis and synthesis, see page 49, and pages following throughout the work, where the words occur in synthetic examples.

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENERAL RULE.

Exc. 1. *It* may be applied to a young child, or to other creatures masculine or feminine, when the sex is not obvious, or when it need not be distinguished.

Exc. 2. *It* sometimes represents a predication, or an insentient predicate, or both combined.

Exc. 3. *It* is often used without special reference to any antecedents or subsequent. In such cases it is expletive, and might be omitted.

Exc. 4. A noun in the singular number preceded by *many* *a*, may be represented in a following sentence by a noun or a pronoun in the plural number.

Exc. 5. *We* is used in stead of *I* by a sort of fiction, to express casually the idea that the speaker is not alone in the declaration which he makes, or to avoid the appearance of egotism or arrogance.

Exc. 6. *You*, though originally and properly plural, is now generally applied indifferently to one person or to more: notwithstanding this usage, the verb to which it is nominative, must be of the plural number.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

My child is very sick, and I am afraid that it will die.

A farmer caught a wild goose, and endeavored to domesticate it. He thought that he had succeeded; but when the season for migration came, it flew off.



My brother killed a deer in the morning, and dressed it in time to supply us with a venison steak for breakfast.

It will be a great honor to have written such a work.

It is better to be studious than to be idle.

It has been decided that the culprit is guilty, and that he be sent to the penitentiary for three years.

The young lady is very handsome, and she has the misfortune to know it.

“How shall I contrive it, to go to court?”

“Come and trip it as you go

On the light fantastic toe.”

I have seen many an Indian passing along this road. They commonly travel in small parties.

I have caught many a trout from this stream. They used to be very plenty.

The preacher said, ‘We shall divide the subject into seven heads and ten sub-divisions.’

We, the Autocrat of all the Russias, make and establish the following decree.

The editor replied, ‘We express our own opinions freely; but we disclaim all intention of controlling the party.’

My son, are you going to school to-day?

## 2. THE COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

A *compound personal pronoun* is used instead of a noun or a pronoun, the idea of which is emphatically expressed or repeated. It is formed by adding *self* or *selves* to a personal pronoun; as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Myself,	ourselves;	Himself,	} themselves. .
Thyself,	yourselves;	Herself,	
		Itself,	

These pronouns are not used in the possessive case; and they are alike in form in the other cases.

*Own* is sometimes interposed between the personal pronoun and *self* or *selves*. In such cases the words form a compound word : but it would be better to write them in separate words, although usage is in favor of the combination. *Own* may be parsed as a possessive adjective pronoun, belonging to *self* or *selves*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns. *Own* is the only possessive adjective pronoun in the language.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

“Now I Paul myself beseech you by the meekness and gentleness of Christ.”

“Jesus answered and said, ‘If I honor myself, my honor is nothing.’”

I perform the chief part of the labor of the farm myself.

“I myself am also a man.”

“For we stretch not ourselves beyond our measure, as though we reached not to you.”

“For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord ; and ourselves your servants for Jesus’ sake.”

“Examine yourselves whether you be in the faith : prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, [how] that Jesus Christ is in you except ye be reprobates.”

“But after thy hardness and impenitent heart, treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath.”

This planter superintends his affairs himself.

You see the portrait of this beautiful woman ; but as she herself is at my house, you would do well to see the original.

The child itself must be taken to the court.

“The spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God.”

“But Paul said unto them, ‘They have beaten us openly uncondemned, being Romans, and have cast us into prison ; and now do they thrust us out privily ; nay, verily ; but let them come themselves, and fetch us out.’”

“But they measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise.”

## 3. THE ADJECTIVE PRONOUN.

An *adjective pronoun* is a definitive word that partakes of the nature of an adjective and a simple pronoun. It belongs to the noun like an adjective, or is used as an index to, and as a substitute for, a noun.

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

## CLASSIFICATION OF ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The adjective pronouns are divided into *distributive*, *definite*, and *indefinite*.

## THE DISTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A *distributive adjective pronoun* implies each one of all the persons or things which make up a number. The words of this class are,

Each,            every,            either,            neither.

*Each* and *every* relate to one of any number, and *either* and *neither* relate to one of two.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

“It came to pass, that two of the sons of Jacob, Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brethren, took each man his sword, and came upon the city boldly, and slew all the males.”

“The Lord grant you, that ye may find rest each of you in the house of her husband.”

“And the king of Israel, and Jehosaphat, the king of Judah, sat each on his throne.”

“And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we are born.”

“And thou shalt not glean thy vineyard, neither shalt thou gather every grape of thy vineyard.”

“The eyes of the Lord are in every place.”

I have two houses; and either of them will answer your purpose.

I have two houses; but neither of them will answer your purpose.

You may take either horn of the dilemma.

You insist that I shall pay the note or renew it. I take the position that I will do neither.

### Logical synthesis.

*It came*—Intransitive predication.

*To pass*—Prepositional phrase.

*That*—Additive conjunction.

*Two took his sword*—Transitive predication.

*Of the sons*—*Of Jacob*—Prepositional phrases.

*Simeon and Levi*—*Dinah's brethren*—Apposition.

*Each man*—Apposition.

*And*—Additive conjunction.

*Came boldly*—Intransitive sentensic predicate.

*And*—Additive conjunction.

*Slew all the males*—Transitive sentensic predicate.

### THE DEFINITE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A *definite adjective pronoun* points out the noun in a definite manner. The words of this class are,

Singular.	Plural.	former,	same,	aforementioned,
This,	these,	latter,	said,	which,
that,	those,	both,	aforesaid,	what.

*This* and *that* are used with, and represent, nouns in the singular number; *these*, *those*, and *both*, nouns of the plural number. The rest of the words of this class are used with and for nouns in the singular or the plural number.

*This* is used in contrast with *that*, and *these* in contrast with *those*. When the antecedent terms are expressed, *this* and *these* refer to the latter, and *that* and *those* to the former. *Former* is used in contrast with *latter* on the same principle.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

"Is not this a brand plucked out of the fire?"

"This is my beloved, and this is my friend, O daughters of Jerusalem."

"This know also that, in the last days, perilous times shall come."

"For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience."

"Joseph said, 'Bring these men home, and slay and make ready; for these men shall dine with me at noon.'"

"And David said unto Saul, 'I can not go with these.'"

"And Jesus answering, said unto them, 'Seest thou these great buildings?'"

"Thou shalt see greater things than these."

"Then went this saying abroad among the brethren, that that disciple should not die."

I remember that we were greatly amused by those funny anecdotes.

"Hope and fear are strong incentives to action: that is the anticipation of good, this of evil."

"O remember not against us former iniquities."

"I have declared the former things from the beginning."

"For behold, I create new heavens and a new earth; and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind."

"For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former."

"The former treatise have I made, O Theophilus."

"I will give you the first rain and the latter rain."

"And he shall come unto us as the rain, as the latter and former rain unto the earth."

"Now the spirit speaketh expressly that in the latter times, some shall depart from the faith."

"And the eyes of them both were opened."

"And they dreamed a dream both of them, each man his dream in one night."

"And if the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch."

"From the rising of the sun unto the going down of the same, thy name is to be praised."

"The same was in the beginning with God."

"He abode two days still in the same place where he was."

"But thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail."

*Said, aforesaid, and aforementioned,* are terms used chiefly in contracts and legal forms. Their precise application can be best learned by reference to form-books, For *which* and *what*, as adjective pronouns of this class, see page 203.

#### THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

An *indefinite adjective pronoun* points out a noun in an indefinite manner. The principal words of this class are,

One,	only,	many,	little,
no,	all,	much,	whatever,
none,	else,	several,	whatsoever,
same,	such,	few,	whichever,
other,	any,	whole,	whichsoever.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I called on the mayor one day last week.

"Our little ones shall dwell in the fenced cities."

"Be of the same mind one towards an other."

"Let there be no strife between thee and me."

"He shall deliver thee in six troubles; yea, in seven there shall no evil touch thee."

"There is none greater in this house than I."

"We look for judgment; but there is none."

"There is none righteous, no not one."

"Therefore he brought down their heart with labor: they fell down, and there was none to help them."

"I can not escape to the mountains, lest some evil overtake me, and I die."

"And he took some of his brethren, even fine men, and presented them to Pharaoh."

"And the children of Israel did so, and gathered, some more, and some less."

"Some trust in chariots, and some in horses ; but we will remember the Lord our God."

"Some, therefore, cried one thing, and some an other."

"Behold seven other kine came up."

"And David played with his hand, as at other times."

We shall complete the job at some time or other.

"I tell you this man went down to his house justified rather than the other."

"And with many other words did he testify and exhort."

"A new commandment I give unto you, 'That ye love one another.'"

"Neither is there salvation in any other ; for there is none other name under heaven, given among men whereby we must be saved."

"Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, and kissed him ; and they asked each other of their welfare."

"Love will make you one another's joy."

"Some say that thou art John the Baptist : some Elias, and others Jeremias, or one of the prophets."

"Therefore, let us not sleep as do others ; but let us watch, and be sober."

"For now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son from me."

"It is written, 'Man shall not live by bread alone.'"

"I will smite the king only."

"Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath."

"Deliver him only, and I will depart from the city."

"She is the only one of her mother."

"We are all one man's sons : we are true men."

"I will make all my goodness pass before thee."



"Ye stand this day all of you before the Lord your God."

"Miserable comforters are ye all."

"They are all the works of his hands."

"The rich and the poor met together : the Lord is the maker of them all."

"Do thyself no harm ; for we are all here."

"And he took unto him all these, and divided them in the midst, and laid each piece one against an other."

"I am the Lord, and there is none else."

"There is no God else besides me."

"Such knowledge is too wonderful for me."

"For he is such a son of Belial, that a man can not speak to him."

"For such are false prophets, deceitful workers."

"Should such a man as I flee ?"

"Yet for love's sake, I rather beseech thee, being such a one as Paul the aged."

"If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God."

"And when ye stand praying, forgive, if ye have aught against any."

"If any man thirst, let him come to me and drink."

"And Job said, 'I have heard many such things.'"

"Many are the afflictions of the righteous."

"By his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many."

"Have ye suffered so many things in vain ?"

"One sinner destroyeth much good."

"Tell me whether ye sold the land for so much."

"And unto one he gave five talents, to an other two, and to an other one : to every man according to his several abilities."

The profits are to be divided semi-annually among the several stockholders.

I do not know the precise number ; but there were several.

"Let the damsel abide with us a few days."

"Few and evil have the days of the years of my life been."

"See whether the people are strong or weak, few or many."

"The harvest truly is plenteous; but the laborers are few."

"Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: fear God, and keep his commandments; for this is the whole duty of man."

"Ye have robbed me, even this whole nation."

"Go again, and buy us a little food."

You have sown much, and gathered little.

"Use a little wine for thy stomach's sake."

"O thou of little faith, wherefore didst thou doubt."

Our physician said, 'I have no confidence whatever in the proposed method of treatment.'

NOTE.—*Whatever, whatsoever, whichever, and whichsoever*, will be illustrated on page 203.

#### 4. THE POSSESSIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

A *possessive personal pronoun* represents a possessor, and the person or thing possessed or appropriated. The words of this class are,

Mine,	his,	ours,	theirs.
thine,	hers,	yours,	

These words are used in the singular and the plural number, and sustain the relations of two cases at one and the same time. The possessive power need not be expressed in the formula of parsing, as it is clearly indicated by the word *possessive*, which constitutes a part of its name.

*Mine, thine, and his*, are used as personal pronouns in the possessive case, when they precede nouns on which they depend. *Mine* and *thine* are much used in the Scriptures and in poetry for *my* and *thy*, before words beginning with a vowel; but this use of these words is not good in common prose.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

His goods came yesterday; but mine are yet on the way.

Yours of the 10th instant came to hand in due time.

I sold my tobacco when my brother sold his.

Is this handkerchief yours, or is it mine?

"My sword and yours are kin."

"We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

This house and lot are mine, and not his.

"Thine is all the glory, mine is the boundless bliss."

Have you seen your son lately? I have not seen mine, since he left home, in January.

I own a farm, and so does my sister; but hers is to be sold.

My cattle have been trying to get into the lot with yours.

A friend of mine mentioned the subject to me a few days ago.

"Your ox has been gored by an unlucky bull of mine."

I shall show my gratitude by befriending you and yours whenever occasion may offer.

"If I were hungry, I would not tell thee; for the world is mine, and the fulness thereof."

"Let it be neither mine nor thine; but divide it."

"My beloved is mine, and I am his."

"To sit on my right hand and on my left is not mine to give."

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*His goods came yesterday; but mine are yet on the way.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Mine* is a possessive personal pronoun. As the representative of the person who speaks, it is masculine gender, singular number, first person. As a representative of goods, it is neuter gender, plural number, third person. It is nominative case to *are*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

#### Logical synthesis.

*His goods came yesterday*—Intransitive predication.

*But*—Adversative conjunction.

*Mine are yet*—Intransitive predication.

*On the way*—Prepositional phrase.

"All mine are thine, and thine are mine."

"For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever."

"Shall not their cattle, and their substance, and every beast of theirs be ours?"

"Blessed are the poor in spirit; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven."

"All things are yours; and ye are Christ's, and Christ is God's."

"I am my beloved's, and my beloved is mine."

This plantation is mine, and not Edward's.

Obs. In the last three examples, the nouns having the possessive form, bear the relations of two cases, like the possessive personal pronouns in the same sentences.

## 5. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A *relative pronoun* represents a preceding noun or pronoun, and sometimes a preceding structure, and superinduces one or more structures without the aid of a conjunction. The principal words of this class are,

Who,                      which,                      that.

### DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular and Plural.		Singular and Plural.		Singular and Plural.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Who,	<i>Nom.</i>	Which,	<i>Nom.</i>	That,
<i>Poss.</i>	whose,	<i>Poss.</i>	whose,	<i>Poss.</i>	—
<i>Obj.</i>	whom.	<i>Obj.</i>	which.	<i>Obj.</i>	that.

*Who* is applied to persons, or to animals and inanimate things personified.

*Which* is applied to animals, young children, and inanimate things.

*That* is applied to persons, animals, and inanimate things.

*Which* may represent a collective noun standing for persons, when the objects composing the collection are referred to collectively; but when they are referred to individually, *who* or *that* should be used.

*That* is used in preference to *who* or *which*,

1. After adjectives in the superlative degree:
2. After the words *same* and *very*:
3. After *who* when used as the antecedent.
4. After an antecedent introduced by *it*:
5. After antecedents limited in their applications only by the relative and its verb:
6. After antecedents which include persons, as well as animals or inanimate things:

The relative pronouns should be placed as near as possible to the antecedent:

*Ever* and *soever* are sometimes added to *who* and *which* when used as relative pronouns.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

##### INTRANSITIVE PREDICATION.

The gentleman who called here on Saturday, has come again.

A horse, which ran in the race to-day, is to be sold at auction to-morrow.

The timber which is now growing on the land, will bring the whole sum expended in the purchase.

The boats which ply on the northern lakes, frequently suffer from violent storms.

##### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The gentleman who called here on Saturday, has come again.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Who* is a relative pronoun, and relates to the antecedent *gentleman*, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *called*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

Logical synthesis.

*The gentleman has come again*—Intransitive predication.

*Who called here*—Intransitive predication.

*On Saturday*—Prepositional phrase.

The committee which acted with so much unanimity, was composed of gentlemen from both parties.

The person who called here yesterday, and wanted you to go with him to California, called again this morning, and left his card, with the request that you meet him at the hotel at four o'clock.

"We hazard nothing in saying that in searching through the statutes, one will find more laws of a general and a permanent nature, which emanated from him than from any one of the public men of the state."

This is the same man that was here a few days ago.

This orator speaks in words that burn.

It was I that whispered, and not Henry.

The man and the horse that fell through the bridge, were both saved from drowning.

#### TRANSITIVE PREDICATION.

A person who cultivates a farm, is a farmer.

The stranger whom you admired so much, is a Kentuckian.

The giraffe which commands such crowds of visitors, was caught in the wilds of Africa.

The paintings which we have been inspecting, are productions of great merit.

We have not learned who committed the blunder.

"But that which ye have already, hold fast till I come."

"Let that, therefore, abide in you which ye have heard from the beginning."

"For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you."

I do not know whom I shall support for the presidency.

The mob which committed such depredations, was put down by the civil and military powers.

The clergyman whom the vestry engaged, has arrived.

I reside on the same farm that my father redeemed from the wilderness.



The man and the camel that attract so much attention, both came from Arabia.

Was it thou or the dog that opened the door?

"He gained the wife and the fortune that he sought."

It is you and I that must bear the brunt of this difficulty.

#### PASSIVE PREDICATION.

My nephew, who was sent to England to be educated, has returned an accomplished scholar.

The cattle that were sent to market by my neighbor, were sold at high prices.

The engines which are constructed at this manufactory, are highly finished.

The review that is conducted by this gentleman, is well sustained by the public.

We do not know who were nominated for the assembly.

We intend to visit the school that is so well conducted here.

"For all men glorified God for that which was done."

The book which I have mentioned, is the best work that has been written on the subject.

#### INTRANSITIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PREDICATION.

The lady who was so sick when you were at my house, is convalescent.

The wolves which were once so troublesome, have disappeared.

I have bought ten bushels of potatoes, which are very good.

"Was then that which is good, made death unto me?"

The lady brought with her a little child, which was exceedingly beautiful.

We fell in with the very stranger that had been so kind to us.

We should be intimate with no person who is vicious in conduct, or violent in temper.

This man indulges in vices that are destructive of health.

"Prove all things; hold fast that which is good."



## INTRANSITIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATION.

I do not know who he is.

I can not respect such a man, let him be who he may.

"And he that was healed wist not who it was: for Jesus had conveyed himself away."

This gentleman, who is an excellent financier, has been made president of the bank.

The shepherd's dog, which is a remarkably sagacious animal, has been lately introduced into this country.

It was he that was the originator of this project.

"Therefore, thou art inexcusable, O man, whosoever thou art that judgest."

"He that troubleth you shall bear his judgment, whosoever he be."

I will bestow the best of the three watches, whichever it be.

## THE PASSIVE POST-ADJECTIVE PREDICATION.

He only who is accounted worthy, will be pronounced blessed in that day.

"Since the world began, was it not heard that any man opened the eyes of one that was born blind."

## THE PASSIVE POST-SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATION.

I have employed an architect who is called a good artist, to make a plan of the building.

There goes the man who was chosen speaker yesterday.

THE POSSESSIVE CASE OF *who* AND *which*.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The countryman whose farm lies beyond those woods, is displeased with the boys for robbing his orchard.

The lady whose portrait you admired so much, is herself at my house.

A certain lad, whose father is a man of distinction, has been arrested for arson.

"These are the agonies of love,  
Whose miseries delight."

“Is there any other doctrine, whose followers are punished?”

“Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be.”

“Saul also went home to Gibeon: and there went with him a band of men, whose hearts God had touched.”

“Whosoever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them.”

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The countryman whose farm lies beyond those woods, is displeased with the boys for robbing his orchard.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Whose* is a relative pronoun, and relates to the antecedent *countryman*, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, and is governed by *farm*. Rule.—Nouns govern nouns and pronouns in the possessive case.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The countryman is displeased*—Passive predication.

*Whose farm lies*—Intransitive predication.

*Beyond those woods*—Prepositional phrase.

*With the boys*—Prepositional phrase.

*For robbing his orchard*—Transitive prepositional gerundive predicate.

*Who* AND *which* APPLIED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Such are the politicians against whom we declaim.

“I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will show mercy on whom I will show mercy.”

“They are a very froward generation, children in whom is no faith.”

“Withhold not good from them to whom it is due, when it is in the power of thine hand to do it.”

“Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.”

“This is my beloved son in whom I am well pleased.”

I do not know the name of the stranger to whom I am indebted for this favor.

"For this is he of whom it is written."

The road on which we are traveling, needs many repairs.

There lies the steamboat about which there has been so much litigation.

"I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make thee a minister and a witness, both of these things which thou hast seen, and of those things in which I will appear unto thee."

"Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord."

"With whomsoever thou findest thy goods, let him not live."

*Whose* AND *of which* EXHIBITED IN CONTRAST.

The use of *whose*, as the possessive case of *which*, is well established by usage ; yet it is generally more elegant, to use *which* with the preposition *of*.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I have bought a mill, whose former owner had become bankrupt.

I have bought a mill, the former owner of which had become bankrupt.

There has been no other religion, whose professors have been so much persecuted.

There has been no other religion, the professors of which have been so much persecuted.

This is the fawn whose dam you shot.

This is the fawn, the dam of which you shot.

*Who*, *which*, AND *that*, APPLIED IN INFINITIVE PREDICATES.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

I called on the gentleman whom my father requested me to invite to dinner.

This merchant has purchased a large stock of goods, which he appears resolved to sell at low prices.

These are the very sentiments that you ought to express.

He is not the man that I took him to be.

I own several town lots, which I am anxious to exchange for a good farm.

The savages brought out the prisoners that they had determined to torture.

“We have done that which was our duty to do.”

This is the gentleman whom you have been anxious to see.

*Who, which, AND that, APPLIED IN TRANSITIVE  
PREPOSITIONAL GERUNDIVE PREDICATES.*

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The conference has sent the preacher whom you are so fond of hearing.

The lad has committed a fault, which he is incapable of concealing.

My curious friend has heard of a stupendous cave, which he is resolved on visiting.

The farm that I think of buying, lies near Rochester.

The curiosities which we shall have the pleasure of inspecting, are said to be very rare.

PREDICATIONS, SUPERINDUCED BY RELATIVE PRONOUNS,  
AND CONNECTED BY *and* OR *or*.

*And* and *or* connect predications superinduced by relative pronouns.

When two or more predications are thus superinduced and connected, the same relative pronoun, in some of its cases, should be employed.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The lady of whom you spoke, and whom you appeared to admire so much, has just gone to the country.

The youth whose name you have mentioned, and whom you have commended so cordially, is a son of a neighbor of mine.

O thou, who art, and who wast, and who art to come.

“And they shall spread them before the sun, and the moon, and all the host of heaven, whom they have loved, and whom

they have served, and after whom they have walked, and whom they have sought, and whom they have worshiped."

I have just purchased the little plantation which I fancied so much, and which you thought to be so valuable.

"I am the Lord that maketh all things, that stretcheth forth the heavens alone, and that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself."

The God whose I am, and whom I serve, is eternal.

"God is the sovereign of the universe, whose majesty ought to fill us with awe, to whom we owe all possible reverence, and whom we are bound to obey."

The property which you have been inspecting, and which you are resolved on buying, will soon be offered at public sale.

The school which was established here about fifty years ago, and in which so great a number of persons have been educated, is still in a flourishing condition.

Persons who have been well instructed in Christian principles, or who feel deeply conscious of moral responsibility, are not apt to fall into a passion at real or fancied insults.

#### *As* HAVING THE FORCE OF A RELATIVE PRONOUN.

*As*, after *such* and *many*, sometimes has the force of a relative pronoun.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

"Jubal was the father of such as dwell in tents, and of such as have cattle."

"You have become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat."

"Truly God is good to Israel, even to such as are of a clean heart."

"And there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was, since there was a nation even to that same time."

"And I will execute vengeance in anger and fury upon the heathen, such as they have not heard."

"Let such a one think this, that such as we are in word by

letters when we are absent, such will we be also in deed when we are present."

"I fear lest, when I come, I shall not find you such as I would, and that I shall be found unto you such as ye would not."

"As many as ye find, bid to the marriage."

"The promise is unto you and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even to as many as the Lord our God shall call."

"And great fear came upon all the churches, and upon as many as heard these things."

"As many as have sinned without law, shall perish without law."

#### 6. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

An *interrogative pronoun* is a word used especially for asking questions. It represents a noun or a pronoun expressed in the answer, or implied in one expected. The only word of this class is *who* with its variations.

Singular and Plural.

*Nom.* Who, *Poss.* whose, *Obj.* whom.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

Who comes there?	Who will be accounted worthy?
Who cut this wood?	Who will be made judge?
Whom did you see?	Whose horse won the race?
Who is righteous?	Whose house is this?
Who art thou?	Whose turn comes next?

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*Who comes there?*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Who* is an interrogative pronoun, and relates to a subsequent implied in the answer, masculine gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *comes*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

Logical synthesis.

*Who comes there?*—Intransitive predication.

"And Isaac, his father, said unto him, 'Who art thou?' And he said, 'I am thy son, thy first born, Esau.'"

"Then said they unto him, 'Who art thou?' And Jesus said unto them, 'Even the same that I said unto you from the beginning.'"

"And Moses said unto God, 'Who am I, that I should go unto Pharaoh, and that I should bring forth the children of Israel out of Egypt?'"

"Who is David? and who is the son of Jesse?"

"Who hath woe? who hath sorrow? who hath contention? who hath babbling? who hath wounds without cause? who hath redness of eyes? They that tarry long at the wine; they that go to seek mixed wine."

"Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, 'Whom shall I send, and who will go for us?' Then said I, 'Here am I, send me.'"

"Whom have I in heaven but thee?"

In whom do you trust in such difficult circumstances?

Whom have the people determined to send to the convention?

Whom did you suppose him to be?

Whom has the governor determined on appointing to this office?

#### 7. THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

An *interrogative adjective pronoun* is used especially in asking questions, either with or without a noun immediately following. The words of this class are *which* and *what*, declined thus,

Singular and Plural.

Nom. Which,	Poss. —	Obj. which.
Nom. What,	Poss. —	Obj. what.

#### SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

What subject is to be on the tapis next?

Which horn of the dilemma do you take?



What apology shall I make for my delinquency ?

What will become of us ?

Which of these animals shall I take ?

“ I have sinned ; what shall I do unto thee, O thou preserver of men ? ”

“ Who hath ascended [up] into heaven or descended ? who hath gathered the wind in his fist ? who hath bound the waters in a garment ? who hath established all the ends of the earth ? what is his name, and what is his son’s name ? ”

Which is mine, and which is yours ?

Which of these routes would be preferable ?

What are we to do in such cases ?

In what vessel did your friend sail ?

To which of the doctrines of our church do you object ?

About what are you making such an ado ?

“ Then said the king, ‘ For what dost thou make request ? ’ ”

Against which faction do you employ your pen ?

What advantage do you hope to gain by such severity ?

What course have you resolved on pursuing ?

What part of speech is the word *table* ?

#### ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*What subject will be on the tapis next ?*

*What will become of us ?*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*What* is an interrogative adjective pronoun, and belongs to *subject*. Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns.

*What* is an interrogative adjective pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case to *become*.

Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

Logical synthesis.

*What subject will be next*—Intransitive post-adjective predication.

*What will become*—Intransitive predication.

## 8. THE COMPOUND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A *compound relative pronoun* is a word which includes in itself both the antecedent and the relative. The words of this class are,

What,	whatsoever,	whosoever,
whatever,	whoever,	whoso.

*What, whatever, and whatsoever*, are each equivalent in construction to *that which*, or *the thing which*; or *those which*, or *the things which*.

*Whoever, whosoever, and whoso*, are equivalent to *he who*, or *they who*.

*Who and which* sometimes sustain the relations of two cases: in such instances they may be regarded compound relatives.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

The applause of the multitude is what most gratifies his vanity.

What most gratifies his vanity, is the applause of the multitude.

You may purchase what you want.

He will always say what he may think appropriate.

The author dictates what the amanuensis writes.

• What he gained by diligence, he lost by extravagance.

What can not be prevented, must be endured.

“He hath showed thee, O man, what is good.”

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*The applause of the multitude is what most gratifies his vanity.*

*What* is a compound relative pronoun, and is equivalent to *that which*, or *the thing which*, neuter gender, singular number, third person, and nominative case after *is*. Rule.—Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as to them, when both words refer to the same thing. It is also nominative case to *gratifies*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

"I will hear what God the Lord will speak."

"When thou sittest to eat with a ruler, consider diligently what is before thee."

"And the apostles gathered themselves together to Jesus, and told him all things, both what they had done, and what they had taught."

"Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do."

"The general conduct of mankind is neither what it was designed, nor what it ought, to be."

"It doth not yet appear what we shall be."

"Whatever purifies, also fortifies, the heart."

Whatever has been ordained by God, must be right.

We should approve whatever may be excellent, even in an enemy.

Whatever he found difficult at first, he overcame by application.

"One truth is clear, 'Whatever is, is right.'"

"Now whatsoever God hath said unto thee, do."

"I will do whatsoever thou sayest unto me."

"Whatsoever is under the whole heaven, is mine."

"Whatsoever he doeth, shall prosper."

"Whatsoever I command thee, thou shalt speak."

"Let your communication be yea, yea; nay, nay; for whatsoever is more than these, cometh of evil."

"Ye are my friends, if ye do whatsoever I command you."

Whoever would be happy, must abstain from evil.

Whoever takes ardent spirits as a beverage, is in danger of becoming a sot.

The society will receive whomever the bishop may appoint to the station.

#### Logical synthesis.

*The applause is what*—Intransitive post substantive predication.

*What most gratifies his vanity*—Transitive predication.

Whoever hates thought and study, will remain an ignoramus.

"Blessed is whosoever shall not be offended in me."

"Whoso keepeth the fig-tree, shall eat the fruit thereof."

"Whoso keepeth the law, is a wise son ; but he that is a companion of a riotous man, shameth his father."

We will reflect on what should be done.

"I hope that you will not object to what is reasonable.

"There is something overwhelming in whatever inspires us with awe."

I will abide by whatever the arbitrators shall say is just.

Having learned what had displeased him, I was not surprised at what he had said.

What I had paid being endorsed on the note, I shall not be obliged to pay it over again.

The lad seeing what he had done, was greatly alarmed.

Advocating what we do not believe to be true, is generally immoral, as well as injudicious.

His having charged what was right when he might have been extortionate, is a proof of honesty.

His buying whatever he pleased on his father's account, tended to make him a spendthrift.

In effecting what I have done, I have taxed my energies to their utmost limit.

It is but fair to hear what may be said on the other side.

"What we are afraid to do before men, we should be afraid to think before God."

I have determined to do in this case whatever may be required by law.

"Whereupon he promised with an oath to give her whatsoever she would ask."

"Shall I hide from Abraham what I am going to do?"

"Choose this day whom ye will serve."

"Whom he would he slew, and whom he would he kept alive, and whom he would he set up, and whom he would he put down."

*Which, what, whatever, whatsoever, whichever,* AND *whichsoever*, APPLIED AS ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS WITH NOUNS SUSTAINING THE RELATIONS OF TWO CASES.

## SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES.

We can not determine which plan would be best.

We do not know what means he has at command.

The agent could not tell which steamer would sail first.

I know not what impression time has made on your person.

He will meet with obstructions, let him take whichever road he may.

I will acquiesce in whatever agreement he may make in relation to this matter.

We should endeavor to do what good we can during our earthly pilgrimage.

“And all things whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive.”

“Whichever road you take, will lead you to the town.”

There are difficulties to be met in whichever path I may choose.

## ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

*We can not determine which plan would be best.*

Etymological analysis and syntactical synthesis.

*Which* is a definite adjective pronoun, and belongs to *plan*.

Rule.—Adjective pronouns belong to nouns. *Plan* is a common noun, neuter gender, singular number, third person objective case, and is governed by *can determine*. Rule.—Transitive verbs govern the objective case. *Plan* is also nominative case to *would be*. Rule.—The nominative case is the agent or the subject of the verb.

## Logical synthesis.

*We can not determine which plan*—Transitive predication.

*Which plan would be best*—Intransitive post adjective predication.

## PROSODY.

PROSODY relates to *punctuation, utterance, figures, and versification.*

## PUNCTUATION.

PUNCTUATION is the art of dividing and marking a composition by stops, or characters, to enable the reader to comprehend more fully the thoughts expressed.

## THE DIVISIONS OF A REGULAR LITERARY WORK.

The divisions of a regular literary work, and the stops, or characters, by which they are divided, are,

The chapter,	[ CHAP. ];	The period,	[ . ];
The section,	[ § ];	The interrogation,	[ ? ];
The paragraph,	[ ¶ ];	The exclamation,	[ ! ].

A *chapter* is a large division of a regular work, in which a distinct part of the general subject is treated.

A *section* is a division of a discourse or a chapter into smaller portions.

A *paragraph* is a portion of a composition, denoted by an indentation of the line at the beginning, and by a break of the

## REMARKS AND SUGGESTIONS.

The rules for PUNCTUATION might have been introduced along in the body of the work where they are applicable under the various heads of Syntax; but it has been thought best to give a separate view of the whole subject under a distinct head.

In nearly every case the rules are presented in the order of the SYNTHETIC EXAMPLES; and to these the student is referred for illustrations, especially for such as relate to the comma and the semicolon.

The rules of punctuation should be studied with some care with Etymology and Syntax; and after these branches of the general subject have been fully discussed, a thorough revision of Punctuation should be made.

line at the end. The especial sign is used when the writer would apprise the reader of the commencement of a new subject.

A *period* is a dispassionate sentence constructed in the direct form.

An *interrogation* is a sentence, or a part of a sentence, constructed in the interrogative form, and used in asking a question without indicating surprise.

An *exclamation* is a sentence, a part of a sentence, or a single word, expressing strong emotion. In expressing great wonder or admiration, two or three signs are sometimes used.

#### DIVISIONS OF SENTENCES, OR PERIODS.

The period, and sometimes the interrogation and the exclamation, is broken into smaller divisions. The signs, or characters, used for this purpose, are,

The comma,	[ , ];	The colon,	[ : ];
The semicolon,	[ ; ];	The dash,	[ — ].

The comma and the semicolon.

The *comma* denotes a division among words and structures which are intimately associated.

The *semicolon* denotes a division of structures, less intimately associated than those separated by the comma.

#### Rules for application.

1. The *adverb* is set off by the comma, when it has not a close connection with some other word, or when it breaks the connection of the essential elements of a predication.

2. The *prepositional structures* are set off by the comma, when they have not a close connection with some word or structure, or when they break the connection of the essential elements of a predication.

3. A *participial predicate* preceding a predication, is set off by the comma.



4. A *participial predicate* in the midst of a predication, is followed by the comma. It is also preceded by the comma, when it is introduced loosely or parenthetically.

5. The *independent case* with its adjuncts, if any, is set off by the comma.

Exc. When this case is used with an interjection, the exclamation is preferred.

6. A noun or a pronoun *in apposition* with a preceding noun or pronoun, is set off by the comma, when it is added by way of explanation: but when the words are very intimately associated, the comma is not necessary.

7. When a *gerundive predicate* is the subject of a verb, and is accompanied by a long infinitive predicate, or by more than one prepositional phrase, it is set off before the verb by the comma.

8. When an *infinitive predicate* is independent, it, with its adjuncts, if any, is set off by the comma.

9. When an *infinitive predicate* is the subject of a verb, and is accompanied by more than one prepositional phrase, it is set off before the verb by the comma.

10. When an *infinitive predicate* follows a predication, and expresses the cause, the reason, or the purpose, expressed in the predication, it is set off by the comma.

11. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *more than two parts of speech*, the comma is inserted between them.

12. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *two parts of speech*, and one or both of them are distinguished by a negative or an emphatic word, or by a prepositional phrase or an insentensic predicate which does not bear equally on both, the comma is inserted between them.

13. When *as well as* connects *one part of speech to another*, it and *as well as* are set off by the comma.

14. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *words in pairs*, they are set off in pairs by the comma.

15. When *and* is suppressed between *two words*, the comma is inserted between them.

16. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *more than two sentensic predicates*, the comma is inserted between them.

17. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *two sentensic predicates*, and one or both of them are composed of more than one element, or are distinguished by a prepositional phrase or an infinitive predicate which does not bear equally on both, the comma is inserted between them.

18. When *as well as* connects *one insentensic predicate to an other*, it and *as well as* are set off by the comma.

19. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *more than two prepositional structures*, the comma is inserted between them.

20. When *and* or, or *nor*, connects *two prepositional structures*, and one of them is distinguished by a negative or an emphatic word, or by a prepositional phrase which does not bear equally on both, the comma is inserted between them.

21. When *as well as* connects *one prepositional structure to an other*, it and *as well as* are set off by the comma.

22. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *more than two insentensic predicates*, the comma is inserted between them.

23. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *two insentensic predicates*, and one of them is distinguished by a negative or an emphatic word, or by a prepositional structure or an infinitive predicate which does not bear equally on both, the comma is inserted between them.

24. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *two infinitive predicates* consisting of more than one element, the comma is inserted between them.

25. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects *two participial predicates*, *two gerundive predicates*, or *two prepositional gerundive predicates*, consisting of more than one or two elements, and expressing thoughts very distinct from each other, the comma is inserted between them.

26. When *as well as* connects *one insentensic predicate* to *an other*, it and *as well as* are set off by the comma.

27. When *and* connects *predications* intimately associated in subject, the comma is inserted between them.

28. When *and* connects *predications* not intimately associated in subject, the semicolon is inserted between them.

29. When *or*, *nor*, *neither*, *else*, or *otherwise*, connects *two predications*, the semicolon is inserted between them.

30. When *further*, *furthermore*, *moreover*, *also*, *likewise*, *besides*, *again*, or *more*, continues the subject, it is set off by the comma. When these words connect *predications*, and continue the subject, they are preceded by the semicolon, and followed by the comma.

Exc. 1. When *and* is used immediately before one of these words, the conjunctions are so intimately associated that the comma is not inserted between them.

Exc. 2. When *also* or *likewise* is used in the sense of *and*, the comma is not inserted after it.

31. When a *conjunction* precedes *two predications* mutually dependent, the comma is inserted between them.

32. When *that* used as a simple additive conjunction, connects *two predications*, the comma is inserted between them.

Exc. When *that* is preceded by *so*, followed by a closing word or two of a sentensic predicate, the comma is not inserted between the *predications*.

33. When *that* connects a *predication* to an *infinitive predicate* following a predication or an insentensic predicate, the comma is inserted before the predication.

34. When an *adversative conjunction* connects *predications*, the semicolon is inserted between them. All of the conjunctions of this class, except *but* and *yet*, are commonly set off from the latter predication by the comma.

35. When *but* connects *one word* to *an other*, it and *but* are set off by the comma.

36. When *but* connects *one prepositional phrase* to *an other*, it and *but* are set off by the comma.

37. When *but* connects *one insentensic predicate* to *an other*, it and *but* are set off by the comma.

38. When a *causative conjunction* connects *predications*, the comma is commonly inserted between them, except in the use of *for*, which is preceded by the semicolon.

39. When an *inferential conjunction* connects *predications*, the semicolon is inserted between them. All of the conjunctions of this class are set off from the latter predication by the comma.

40. When an *adverbial conjunction* connects *predications*, the comma is commonly inserted between them.

Obs. When one or both of the predications are short, and are not accompanied by a prepositional phrase or an insentensic predicate, the comma is unnecessary.

41. When a *comparative adverbial conjunction* connects *predications*, the comma is inserted between them, when the connecting word is preceded by a correspondivive adverbial conjunction, or when the predications are long and not intimately associated.

42. When *as* connects a *noun* to a *noun* or a *pronoun*, to express the character in which a person or a thing is to act or to be taken, it is set off with *as* by the comma.

43. When a *conditional conjunction* connects *predications*, the comma is inserted between them.

Obs. When *yet* precedes the latter predication, the semicolon is inserted before it.

44. When a *relative pronoun* superinduces a *predication*, and it stands in the midst of an other predication, it is followed by the comma. When it is introduced loosely or parenthetically, it is also preceded by the comma.

Obs. The principles of this rule are applicable, whether the relative pronoun is a part of the predication introduced, or not.

45. When the *compound relative pronoun* stands before *two*

*predications* of which it constitutes a part, the comma is inserted between them.

46. When *and*, *or*, or *nor*, connects two or more parts of speech separated by the comma, the adjective, participle, verb, or relative clause, which bears equally upon both or all of them, is preceded by the comma.

#### The colon.

47. The *colon* is used to separate those parts of a period which are not so intimately allied as those separated by the semicolon. It is used especially before the last member of those periods whose former members are separated by the semicolon.

#### The dash.

48. The *dash* denotes an unexpected or an emphatic pause, or a faltering in speech.

49. The *dash* is used with other stops, or characters, to lengthen the pause, with the view to render what follows more distinct.

50. The *dash* is used to denote the omission of words or figures. When placed between the extremes of a series of numbers, or between two letters of a word, it may represent the intermediate ones.

#### Capital letters.

1. In every kind of type each letter is expressed by *capital* and *small letter*. Small letter constitutes the body of a composition or a work ; and capitals are used to distinguish particular words.

Words following begin with a capital letter ;

1. The first word of every sentence :
2. The first word of every clause distinctly numbered :
3. The first word of every distinct quotation :
4. The first word of every line in poetry, except such as may be regarded a continuation of a preceding line :
5. The names of the Deity, and commonly their emphatic substitutes.

6. Proper nouns :

7. Titles of honor and epithets of distinction used with proper nouns :

8. Words derived from proper nouns, and having still a special reference to their origin ;

9. I and O when used as distinct words ;

10. Common nouns personified :


11. The chief words in the titles of books.

OTHER MARKS, OR CHARACTERS, APPLIED WITH THOSE  
ALREADY EXPLAINED.

The caret, [ ^ ] ; The parenthesis, or curves, [ ( ) ] ;

The hyphen, [ - ] ; The brackets, or crotchets, [ [ ] ] ;

The apostrophe, [ ' ] ; The guillemets, or quotation

The index, [  ] ; points, [ " " ] .

The brace, [ — ] ;

The *caret* denotes the particular place of introducing letters or words that may have been omitted. It is used in correcting manuscripts and printed proofs.

The *hyphen* is used to connect the distinct parts of a compound word. Placed at the end of a line, it indicates that one or more syllables of a word are carried to the next line.

The *apostrophe* denotes the possessive case of the noun, and the elision of one or more letters of a word. It is also used before *s* in pluralizing a mere letter or a sign.

The *index* is used to direct the attention to something remarkable.

The *brace* is used to connect several words or terms to other words which bear to them a common relation.

The *parenthesis*, or *curves*, are used to distinguish a clause hastily thrown into a sentence for the purpose of explanation.

OBS. The curves do not supersede other points, or stops. They should be sparingly used.

The *brackets* or *crotchets* are used to inclose some correction or explanation, and sometimes a word, a sign, or a part of a subject to be explained in a note.



The *guillemets*, or *quotation points*, are used to include passages taken from an author or a speaker in his own words. A quotation within a quotation is marked with a single point at each end of the passage.

Obs. The single quotation points do not supersede the double points.

#### CHARACTERS USED FOR MARGINAL REFERENCE.

The asterisk, or star, [ \* ]; The diesis, or double dagger, [ † ]; The obelisk, or dagger, [ ‡ ]; The parallels, [ || ].

When these characters are exhausted by one application of each on a single page or in a single chapter, they are doubled for additional reference. The section and the paragraph are also used with the preceding characters. The letters of the alphabet, and the Arabic figures are also used for this purpose, when different classes of references are required.

The *Asterism*, or *three stars*, [ \*\*\* ] is placed before a note without particular reference.

\*\*\* The remaining branches of this part of Grammar, are postponed with the view to discussing them hereafter in separate works.

THE END.









LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 182 430 8

